

PC 2109

.S68

Copy 1



Vol. 17, Educational Series, price One Shilling.

A GRAMMAR
OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.
CONTAINING
COMPLETE AND CONCISE RULES
ON THE
GENDERS OF FRENCH NOUNS.

BY G. L. STRAUSS, PH. DR.

Professor and Translator of Languages.
Formerly Lecturer on French Literature at Besançon.

LONDON: JOHN WEALE. 1853.



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chap. FC 2109

No. S 683

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.



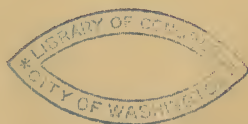


A GRAMMAR
OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,

CONTAINING
COMPLETE AND CONCISE RULES ON
THE GENDERS OF FRENCH NOUNS.

✓
BY G. L. STRAUSS, PH. DR.,

Professor and Translator of Languages.
Formerly Lecturer on French Literature at Besançon.



LONDON :
JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN.
1853.

PC2109
.568

LONDON:
BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

PREFACE.

THE "Grammar" of a language may be defined as a systematically and methodically arranged collection of the rules which govern the proper and correct mode of *speaking* and *writing* it. Even an elementary Grammar must, to a certain extent, answer this definition, or it is not what it professes to be.

It is upon this view of the subject that I have proceeded in the compilation and composition of the present work;—and I think, I may safely assert that, though from the restricted limits, and the professedly elementary nature of the book, I have been compelled to confine myself, in a measure, to mere occasional and fragmentary remarks on the *grammatical mechanism* and the *syntactic construction* of the French language, yet, in so far as the etymological branch of Grammar is concerned, no rule of any importance has been omitted; and that the student when he has occasion to consult this work, will rarely find himself disappointed in obtaining the desired information.

Noël and Chapsal's truly classical grammar of the French language has supplied the general plan for the present work. I have consulted also the "*Grammaire des Grammaires*," *Levizac's* and *Brasseur's* English-French Grammars, and *Arnold's* most excellent "First French Book." In the section on the Gender, I have largely drawn from *Prideaux's* equally concise and complete treatise on that important branch of French grammar.

CONTENTS.

- INTRODUCTION.—The Alphabet, 1.—Pronunciation, 3.—Orthography, 13.
- CHAP. I.—The article, 23.—The substantive, 30.
- CHAP. II.—The qualificative adjective, 50.—The determinative adjective, 63.
- CHAP. III.—The numerals, 70.
- CHAP. IV.—The personal pronouns, 75.—The demonstrative pronouns, 85.
—The possessive pronouns, 89.—The relative pronouns, 90.
- CHAP. V.—The Verb :—Introductory Remarks, 100.—Conjugation of the verbs, 102.—*Avoir*, 104.—*Être*, 106.—First conjugation, 108.—Second conjugation, 113.—Third conjugation, 119.—Fourth conjugation, 126.—Passive voice of transitive verbs, 136.—Conjugation of pronominal verbs, 136.—Interrogative and negative forms of conjugation, 139.—Concord of the verb with its subject, 142.—Government of the verb, 145.—Use of the tenses, 147.—The subjunctive mode, 148.—The infinitive mode, 150.
- CHAP. VI.—The participle present, 151.—The participle past, 152.
- CHAP. VII.—The adverb, 157.—The preposition, 158.—The conjunction, 161.—The interjection, 163.

GRAMMAR

OF

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

INTRODUCTION.

—♦—

THE ALPHABET.

THE French Alphabet consists of the following twenty-five letters:—

		NAME.	PRONOUNCED.
A	a	Ah	like <i>a</i> in <i>far</i> .
B	b	Bey	
C	c	Cey or Sey	} <i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .
D	d	Dey	
E	e	Ey	
F	f	Ef	
G	g	Jey	<i>j</i> like <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> , or <i>z</i> in <i>azure</i> , <i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .
H	h	Ash	
I	i	E	
J	j	Jee	<i>j</i> like <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> , or <i>z</i> in <i>azure</i> . like <i>ca</i> in <i>calf</i> .
K	k	Kah	
L	l	El	
M	m	Em	
N	n	En	
O	o	O	
P	p	Pey	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .
Q	q	Kü*	
R	r	Err	
S	s	Ess	
T	t	Tey	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .
U	u	Ü*	
V	v	Vey	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> . as in <i>rix-dollar</i> .
X	x	Ix	
Y	y	E grec	
Z	z	Zed	

* The English language has no sounds corresponding to the French *u* and *eu*; German letters—the compound vowels *ü* and *ö*, which correspond respectively to the French *u* and *eu*—have, therefore, been pressed into the service here, to avoid leaving any gap in the names and sounds of the letters of the French alphabet.

Six of these letters are vowels: *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*; the remaining nineteen are consonants.

Besides the sounds expressed by the vowels *a, e, i (y), o*, and *u*, there are several other simple sounds in French, which are represented by certain combinations of letters. Such combinations are,—

1. The *compound vowels*: *ai, eu (æ, æu)*, and *ou*.

	PRONOUNCED.
<i>Ai</i>	<i>ay</i> as in <i>may</i>
<i>Eu</i>	<i>ö</i> *
<i>Ou</i>	<i>oo</i> as in <i>room</i> .

2. The so-called *nasal vowels*: *an (en, am, em)*, *in (im, yn, ym, ein, ain, aim)*, *on (om)*, and *un (um)*.

	PRONOUNCED.
<i>An</i>	<i>ang</i> as in <i>anguish</i> .
<i>In</i>	<i>eng</i> or <i>eing</i> , as <i>eng</i> in <i>length</i> .
<i>On</i>	<i>ong</i> or <i>ongue</i> , as in <i>long</i> and <i>tongue</i> .
<i>Un</i>	<i>ung</i> , somewhat between the sound <i>eng</i> in <i>length</i> , and <i>ung</i> in <i>rung</i> .

The sound *o* is expressed also by *au* and *eau*.

To the preceding sounds we have still to add the diphthongs, which are formed in French by the combination of the vowels *i, o, ou*, and *u*, with some other vowel.

The principal diphthongs are,—

		PRONOUNCED.	
<i>ia</i>	<i>diacre</i>	<i>de-akkre</i>	deacon.
<i>iai</i>	<i>biais</i>	<i>be-ay</i>	slope.
<i>ian</i>	<i>viande</i>	<i>ve-ang'd</i>	meat.
<i>iau</i>	<i>miauler</i>	<i>me-oley (ey as in they)</i>	to mew.
<i>ie</i>	<i>ciel</i>	<i>ce-ell</i>	heaven.
	<i>pierre</i>	<i>pe-ayrr</i>	stone.
	<i>pied</i>	<i>pe-ey</i>	foot.
<i>ié</i>	<i>amitié</i>	<i>am-e-te-ey (ey as in they)</i>	friendship.
<i>ie</i>	<i>bière</i>	<i>be-ayre</i>	beer.
<i>ien</i>	<i>audience</i>	<i>o-de-angs</i>	audience.
	<i>lien</i>	<i>le-eng</i>	tie.
<i>ieu</i>	<i>lieu</i>	<i>le-ö *</i>	place.
<i>io</i>	<i>violon</i>	<i>ve-olong</i>	violin.
<i>ion</i>	<i>passion</i>	<i>pass-e-ong</i>	passion.
<i>iou</i>	<i>chiourme</i>	<i>she-urm</i>	a galley's crew.
<i>iu</i>	<i>reliure</i>	<i>rel-e-ür *</i> (<i>e</i> very short)	binding.
<i>oe</i>	<i>moëlle</i>	<i>mo-ell</i>	marrow.
<i>oi †</i>	<i>loi</i>	<i>lo-a (a as in fat)</i>	law.

* See note, page 1.

† In the word *roide*, stiff, stubborn, the *oi* is sounded *ay*, except in the elevated and poetic style, where it is pronounced *oa* (*ro-ad*).

PRONOUNCED.

<i>oin</i>	<i>besoin</i>	bez-o-eng	want, need.
<i>oua</i>	<i>ouate</i>	hwat (<i>a</i> as in <i>far</i>)	wadding.
<i>ouai</i>	<i>ouaiche</i>	hwaysh	track of a ship.
<i>ouan</i>	<i>Chouan</i>	shoo-ang	Chouan
<i>ouè</i>	<i>fouet</i>	{ foo-ay (the <i>oo</i> somewhat shorter than in <i>too</i>) }	a whip.
<i>ouen</i>	<i>Rouen</i>	between Roo-ang and Rwang	a city in Normandy.
<i>oui</i>	<i>oui</i>	whee	yes.
<i>ouin</i>	<i>babouin</i>	{ bab-oo-eng (the <i>oo</i> somewhat shorter than in <i>too</i>) }	baboon.
<i>ua</i>	<i>nuage</i>	{ nüazhe * (<i>a</i> a little shorter than in <i>far</i> ; <i>zh</i> like <i>z</i> in <i>azure</i>) }	cloud.
<i>uai</i>	<i>nuaison</i>	nüayzong *	a trade wind.
<i>uan</i>	<i>nuance</i>	nüangs *	shade.
<i>ué</i>	<i>nuée</i>	nüey* (<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i>)	cloud, swarm.
<i>uen</i>	<i>influence</i>	engflüangs*	influence.
<i>ui</i>	<i>suite</i>	sveet	retinue.
<i>uin</i>	<i>Juin</i>	{ between Zhveng and Zhu-eng (<i>zh</i> like <i>z</i> in <i>azure</i>) }	June.

Pronunciation of the Letters.

The attempt which has been made in the preceding paragraph to imitate the French sounds by combinations of English letters, has not been made so much for the purpose of conveying a notion of French pronunciation, but rather with a view to show the extreme difficulty, if not positive impracticability, of the task. The pronunciation of the French language must be acquired by the ear; a few lessons from a good master, or a short residence in the country, will benefit the pupil more in this respect than could be accomplished by any *imitative writing* of sounds, however so ingeniously contrived. Nevertheless, considering that there are many students of French restricted in a measure to self-teaching, we shall endeavour here to give as ample rules on the pronunciation of that tongue, as the necessarily confined limits of an elementary work like the present will permit.

Pronunciation of the Vowels.

A.

A is pronounced either *long* or *short*. The *long a* sounds like *a* in *far*: *pâte*, dough. The *short a* sounds like *a* in *fat*: *patte*, paw.

The *a* is not sounded in *août*, August; *aoriste*, aorist; *Saône*, a river in France; *taon*, gad-fly; which are pronounced as if they were written respectively *oût*, *oriste*, *Sône*, *ton*.

* See note, page 1.

E.

E has three principal sounds, viz., the *close* or *acute*, the *broad* or *grave*, and the *mute*.

The *close* or *acute e* resembles the English *ey* in *they* : *aménité*, pleasantness, sweetness of temper ; *rocher*, rock ; *nez*, nose.

The *broad* or *grave* sound of the *e* is either *long* or *short* ; the *long broad e* sounds like the English *ay* in *nay* ; *père*, father ; *succès*, success ; *tête*, head. The *short broad e* resembles the English *e* in *fell* : *il appelle*, he calls.

The *mute e* is either simply *dull* and *scarcely audible*, or *absolutely still*. In the former case, it resembles the *e* in *battery* : *me*, me ; *de*, of ; *degré*, degree ; *livre*, book ; *table*, table. The *e* is absolutely still in *paiement*, payment ; *je prie*, I pray ; *je prierai*, I shall pray, &c. ; and at the end of words when it is preceded by a vowel or a simple consonant ; *boule*, bowl, ball ; *école*, school ; *rue*, street ; *vie*, life ; *joie*, joy ; *roue*, wheel, &c. The *e* is silent also in *Caen*, a town in Normandy. The *mute e* is used sometimes to soften the sound of the *g* before *a*, *o*, *u*, *ai*, *ou*, *oi*.

I.

I is pronounced either *long* or *short*. In the former case it sounds like the English *ee* in *deer*, or like the *i* in *oblique*, *machine* : *île*, island ; *épître*, epistle. The sound of the short *i* resembles the English *i* in *his*, *fig* : *émissaire*, emissary.

I is not sounded in *oignon*, onion ; *moignon*, stump ; *poignard*, dagger ; *poignée*, handful, handle of a sword, and in *Michel Montaigne*, which name is pronounced as if it were written *Montagne*.

O (AU, EAU).

O is either *long* or *short*. In the former case it sounds like the English *o* in *rose*, *bone*, *stone* : *motion*, motion ; *côte*, coast, rib ; *étai*, vice (smith's) ; *tuyau*, pipe, tube ; *morceau*, bit, morsel ; *nouveau*, new, novel. In the latter it sounds like the English *o* in *not* ; *botte*, boot ; *hotte*, dorser, basket.

The *o* does not sound in *faon*, fawn ; *Laon*, a city in France ; *paon*, peacock.

U.

U is either *long*, as in *flûte*, flute ; or *short*, as in *lutte*, struggle. It has already been stated that the English language has no sound corresponding to the French *u*. In *club* it is sounded by many like *o*.

U is used sometimes to harden the sound of the *g* before *e* and *i*, in which case it is not sounded except in *aiguiser*, to sharpen ; *aiguillon*, sting ; *sanguinaire* ; and *Guise*, proper name.

Y.

This letter stands either for one *i* or for two *i*'s. For one *i* at the commencement and at the end of words: *yacht*, *dey*; and in the middle of words after a consonant: *style*, *symétrie*;—for two *i*'s in the middle of words after a vowel: *pays*, country; *moyen*, means; which are pronounced as if written *pai-is*, *moi-ien*.

AI (EI)

Is pronounced mostly like the English *ay* in *may*: *aide*, help; *haine*, hatred; *laine*, wool (*ei* has the same sound in *baleine*, whale; *haleine*, breath). In some words, however, it is sounded more like the acute French *é*, or English *ey*, as in *they*: *aigu*, sharp; *aiguille*, needle; this latter sound it has more particularly in the first person singular of the future tense of verbs in general, and in the definite tense of verbs of the first conjugation. *Ai* has the sound of the mute *e* in *faisant*, doing; and that of *a* (like *a* in *far*) in *douairière*, dowager.

EU.

Eu is either long, as in *jeûne*, fast; or short, as in *jeune*, young. It has already been stated that the English language has no sound corresponding to the French *eu*. The sound of the short *eu*, however, may be described as somewhat similar to the English *u* in *tub*.

OU.

Ou is pronounced either *long* or *short*. In the former case, it sounds like the English *oo* in *boon*: *croûte*, crust, rind; in the latter, like *u* in *bushel*, *full*, *bull*; *goutte*, drop.

NOTE.—As a general rule, are *short*—all vowels followed by a *double consonant* (*bb*, *cc*, *cq*, *dd*, *gg*, *ll*, *mm*, *nn*, *pp*, *rr*, *ss*, *tt*): *long*—all vowels marked with an accent (circumflex, grave, or acute); all vowels followed by several different consonants (in the same syllable); all vowels before a consonant followed by a mute *e*; and all vowels at the end of a syllable.

The Nasal Vowels.

The general pronunciation of the nasal vowels has already been given, page 2.

Am is pronounced without nasal sound at the end of some foreign names, as *Abraham*, *Roboam*, *Rotterdam*, *Potsdam*, *Cham*, &c.; *Adam*, however, is pronounced *Adang*.

Ann and *ann* are pronounced without nasal sound; thus, *constamment* is pronounced *constammang*; *année*, *anney*.

Amnistie is pronounced *amnistee*. In *damner* and *condamner* the *m* is not sounded.

Em is sounded like the English *em* in *hem*, in proper names, as *Jerusalem*, *Sem*; and in some words taken from the Latin language; *item*, *décemvir*, *décemvirat*.

The sound of *em* in *hem* is given also to *emm*, except in compound words, such as *emmancher*, *emmariner*, &c., in which the preposition is distinctly sounded. In *femme*, and in adverbs in *emment*, the *e* preceding the *mm* is sounded like the English *a* in *fat*: thus *femme* is pronounced *fam*; *différemment*, *diffeyram-ang*; *lemme*, *lemma*, is pronounced *laym*.

Indemnité is pronounced *engdamneetey* (*ey* as in *they*).

En is sounded like the English *en* in *men*, in *abdomen*, *amen*, *hymen*, *examen*; however, *hymen* is pronounced sometimes also with the nasal sound, and *examen* is frequently pronounced *exameng*. In *Mentor*, *Ruben*, *Benjamin*, the *en* is pronounced *eng*; the same pronunciation is given to the *en* in *memento*, *agenda*; and to *en* final: *ancien*, *mien*, *bien*, *européen*; and also to *en* in the singular of the present tense (indicative), and in the future and conditional tenses of *venir*, *tenir*, and their compounds: *il vient*, *il viendra*, *nous tiendrons*, *vous tiendriez*.

The termination *ent* of the third person plural of verbs is sounded like a simple *e*; *ils donnent*, *ils aimeraient*, *ils parlaient*, are pronounced as if written *donne*, *aimeraie*, *parlaie*.

Enn is pronounced like the English *en* in *men*. *Solennel* and *hennir* are pronounced respectively *solannel* and *hanneer*.

In *enamourer*, *enhardir*, *enharmonique*, *enivrer*, *ennuyer*, *enorgueillir*, the *en* is pronounced like *an*.

In and *in* are pronounced without a nasal sound—1. when the *m* or *n* is followed (in the same word) by a vowel or mute *h*: *inanimé*, *inhumain*:—2. in the word *intérim*, and in proper names taken from foreign languages: *Selim*, *Ephraïm*, *Ibrahim*. However, the nasal sound is preserved in *Benjamin*, *Joachim*.

Imm and *inn* are not nasal: *immoler*, *immense*, *inné*, *innover*.

In the words *calomnie*, *automnal*, *insomnie*, *somnambule*, *hymne*, the *m* and *n* are both distinctly sounded: *cal-omnee*, &c.

In *automne*, the *m* is not sounded.

Um is pronounced *om* in some words taken from the Latin, as *géranium*, *album*, *laudanum*, &c.

The *n* of *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*, *un*, final, is softened and drawn over to the vowel commencing the next word, in cases only where the sense admits of no break or pause between the two words; e. g., *il m'en a parlé*, *mon ami*, *certain auteur*, *on ignore*, *un esprit*, &c. But the sound remains nasal if the sense admits of a break between the two words; e. g., *mon cousin est venu*, *notre vin rouge est bien bon à boire*, &c.

Consonants.

B has the same sound as in English. It is sounded in *radoub* and *rumb*, but not in *plomb*.

C sounds like *k* before *a, o, u, l, n, r*, and also generally at the end of words. It sounds like *c* in *cider*, before *e, i, y*; when marked with a cedilla (*ç*), it has the same soft sound also before *a, o, u*. In *second* and its derivatives it has the sound of the hard *g* in English; the same sound is given to it also in *secrétaire, secrétairerie, secrétariat*, which, however, are pronounced also *sekrétaire, &c.* In *violoncelle* and *vermicelle*, it is usually pronounced like *sh*, on account of the Italian origin of these words.

It is not sounded in *croc, accroc, arc-boutant, banc, blanc, broc, clerc, cotignac, cric, donc* (before a consonant), *échecs, estomac, flanc, franc, jonc, lacs* (snare, string, noose), *marc d'argent* (eight ounces of silver), *porc, tabac, tronc*; but it sounds in *échec, Marc* (Mark, proper name), *croc-en-jambe, franc étourdi, du blanc au noir, porc-épic*.

Ch before a vowel sounds like *sh* in *she, shake*: *chat, chercher*; before a consonant it is always pronounced like *k*: *Christ, chrétien, technique, &c.* In *drachme*, it has the sound of the hard *g*. In *almanach* it is silent.

In most words taken from the Greek, or some Oriental language, *ch* sounds like *k*, even though followed by a vowel: *Achab, Antiochus, Anacharsis, Melchisédec, archétype, Chaldée, Chio, catéchumène, Chersonèse, chiromancie, Acheloüs, archange, orchestre, &c.* In *Michel Ange* also it is sounded like *k*; but in *Achéron* it has the sound of *sh*.

D is pronounced as in English. *D* at the end of words is mute, except before words beginning with a vowel or mute *h*, where it is sounded like *t*: *grand homme*, pronounced *grang-tomm, &c.*

It is sounded like the English *d* at the end of proper names: *Alfred, David, Gad, Obed, &c.*; and in a few words of foreign extraction: *éphod, lamed, Cid, Sud, Sund, Talmud*.

The *d* final is always mute in *bond, fond, gond, muid, nid, næud*, and *pied*; except in the following locutions, where it is pronounced with the sound of *t*: *de fond en comble, de pied en cap, tenir pied-à-boule, avoir un pied-à-terre*.

F is pronounced as in English. *F* final is sounded, except in *cerf, cerf-volant, clef, œuf frais, œuf dur, nerf de bœuf, bœuf gras, éteuf, chef-d'œuvre*, and in the plurals, *œufs, bœufs, nerfs, neufs* (new).

G is pronounced like the English *g* in *go, glue, grave*, before

a, o, u, and consonants. Before *e, i,* or *y,* its sound resembles that of the *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*.

G final is mute in *bourg, faubourg, doigt, legs, poing, vieux-
oing, hareng, étang, vingt, signet, Regnard* (name of a French poet), and in *rang, sang, long* before a consonant.

Gn has generally the liquid sound: *signer*, pronounced *sinyey* (the first *y* as in *year*, the *ey* as in *they*). At the beginning of words, however, and in the middle of some words, it is pronounced like the English *gn* in *ignorant*: *Gnide, gnome, Progné, igné, stagnant, diagnostic, regnicole, agnat, impregnation, &c.*

When double *g* stands before *e* or *i*, the *hard* sound is given to the first, the *soft* to the second *g*; e. g., *suggérer*.

H at the beginning of words is either mute or aspirate. It is aspirated in the following words and their derivatives:—*Hableur, hache, hagard, haie, haillons, haïr, haire, hâler, halle, hallebarde, halte, hamac, hanche, hanneton, hanter, harangue, haras, harasser, harceler, hardes, hardi, hareng, hargneux, haricots, haridelle, harnais, harpe, harpie, harpon, hasard, hâter, hausser, haut, haut-bois, havresac, hennir, héraut d'armes, hérissier, hêtre, heurter, hibou, hideux, hiérarchie, homard, honte, horde, hors, hotte, houblon, houille, houlette, houppe, houppe-
lande, houspiller, housse, huche, huées, huguenot, huit, humer, huppe, hure, hurler, hussard.* The *h* is aspirated also in *héros, Hollande, and Hongrie*; but we say without aspiration, *l'héroïsme, l'héroïne, l'héroïque vertu, fromage d'Hollande, toile d'Hollande, eau de la reine d'Hongrie.*

H in the middle of words is mute, except in compounds of words sounded with the aspirated *h*, such as *dehors, éhonté, &c.*

H is always silent after *r* or *t*.

J has the sound of *s* in *pleasure*, or of *z* in *azure*.

K has the same sound as in English. This letter occurs only in a few words of foreign extraction.

L has, in most words, the same sound as in English.

L final, preceded by *ai, ei, æi, eui, oui,* and double *l* in the middle of words, preceded by *i,* have a liquid sound, resembling that of the English *ll* in *brilliant, million,* or *gl* in *seraglio: orgueil, bail, travail, merveilleux, treillage, &c.*

Il final is liquid in *avril, babil, Brésil, cil, gentil* (pagan), *gentilhomme* (in *gentil*, pretty, genteel, and in the plural, *gentilshommes*, the *l* is silent), *mil, péril.*

The *l* is silent in *baril, chenil, coutil, fenil, fils, fournil, fusil, gril, nombril, outil, persil, pouls, soûl, sourcil.* In *fil*, thread, and *poil*, hair, the *l* has its proper sound.

Ill is not liquid at the commencement of words, nor in the

following words and their derivatives: *armillaire, cavillation, codicille, distiller, fibrille, fritillaire, imbécille, instiller, maxillaire, mille, osciller, pupille, pusillanime, scintiller, la Sybille, titiller, tranquille, vaciller, ville*. *Achille* is pronounced *Asheel*.

The *l* is liquid in *Milhaut, Pardalhac, and Sully*, proper names.

M and *N* have the same sound as in English, except when preceded by *a, e, i, o, u, y* (see *Nasal Vowels*). *Monsieur* is pronounced as if written *Mossieu*.

P and *Ph* are sounded as in English.

P is mute in *Baptiste, baptême, baptistaire, baptiser, dompter, exempter, corps, compte*, and its derivatives; *exempt, sculpter*, and its derivatives; *prompt*, and its derivatives; *sept, septième, septièmement* (in the other derivatives of *sept* it is heard); *temps, printemps*; and also in the three persons singular of the present indicative of *rompre* and *corrompre*. But it is sounded in *baptismal*.

P final is silent in *champ, camp, drap, loup, sirop, galop*; and also in *trop, beaucoup, and coup*, before consonants.

In *laps, relaps, and rapt*, both the final consonants are pronounced.

Q is sounded as in English. It is mute in *coq d'Inde*, though sounded in *coq*. In *cinq* (five), the *q* is not sounded except before a vowel or a mute *h*, at the end of a sentence, and in numeration.

Qu is in most words sounded like *k*: *qualité, queue, que, question, &c.* In some words, before *a*, it is sounded *koo*; *aquatique, aquatile, quadrature, quaterne, équateur, équation, in-quarto, quadragénaire, quadragésime, quadruple, quadripède, quaker* (pronounced *kooaker, a* as in *far*), *liquation, quadriges, loquacité*. In some other words, before *e* and *i*, it is sounded like the English *qu*, or like *kv*: *quintile*, pronounced *kvinteel*, *à quia, équestre, équitation, liquéfier, questeur, quintuple, quirinal, Quinte-Curce, Quintilien, &c.*

R is sounded as the English *r* in *remnant, error*; it should always be pronounced distinctly, more particularly in the middle of a word, between a vowel and a consonant.

R final is always sounded after the vowels *a, i, o, u*, except in *Monsieur*.

The terminations *er* and *ier* of the infinitive of verbs of the first conjugation, are pronounced respectively *é* and *ié*, (*ey* and *e-ey*, *ey* as in *they*), except when followed by a vowel or a mute *h*: *aimer l'éclat*, pronounced *aiméy leycla* (the *ey* as in *they*, the final *a* as in *far*); *aimer à chanter*, pronounced *aiméyra shangtey* (the final *a* as in *far*—*ey* as in *they*).

In many adjectives and nouns the terminations *er* and *ier* are pronounced respectively *ey* and *e-ey*. *Er* is sounded *air* in the following words: *Jupiter*, *Alger*, *Pater* (the Lord's prayer), *Lucifer*, *Gessner*, *Niger*, *amer*, *belvédér*, *cancer*, *cher*, *cuiller*, *enfer*, *éter*, *fer*, *fier*, *frater*, *gaster*, *hier*, *hiver*, *magister*, *mer*, *Stathouder*, *ver*.

When the adjectives *dernier*, *entier*, *léger*, *premier*, *singulier*, and a few others, precede a substantive beginning with a vowel or mute *h*, the *r* is sounded, being drawn over to the initial vowel: *son premier acte*, pronounced *song prem-e-ay-ract*; *un singulier événement*, &c. However, before *à*, *et*, and *en*, the final *r* of these adjectives remains silent.

In the terminations *ers*, *erd*, *ert*, *ard* (*ards*), *art* (*arts*), *ord* (*ords*), *ort* (*orts*), the *r* is sounded, but the *d*, *t*, *s*, *ds*, and *ts*, remain silent: *vers*, *remords*, *canard*, *il perd*, *vert*, *art*, *mort*, &c.

Double *r* is sounded in the initial *irr*; in the future and conditional of *acquérir*, *courir*, *mourir*; in *errer*, *horreur*, *torréfier*, and their derivatives.

S at the beginning of words has the sound of the English *s* in *sister*: *soldat*, *salade*, *sacrer*. It has the same sound in the middle of a word, when preceded or followed by a consonant. *S* has the soft sound of the English *s* in *please*, or *z* in *zeal*, in the middle of words between two vowels, *base*, *rose*, *ruse*, *aise*. Except *désuétude*, *pusillanime*, and in some compounds in which the second constituent begins with *s*: *entresol*, *parasol*, *tournesol*, *préséance*, *vraisemblable*, &c. *S* has the soft sound in *sbire*, *svelte*, *Sganarelle*, *asbeste*, *balsamine*, *balsamique*, *bisbille*, *presbytère*, *transitif*, *transiger*, *transitoire*, *transaction*, *trans-alpin*, and some few other words; and in *Arsace*, *Asdrubal*, *Esdras*, *Israël*, *Isboseth*, *Thisbe*, *Alsace*, *Augsbourg*, *Brisgaw*, *Lesbos*, *Louisbourg*, *Presbourg*, *Philipsbourg*, *Ryswick*.

S is mute in *du Guesclin*.

S final is mute in *Jésus Christ*, pronounced as if written *Jésu Chri*; *fleur-de-lis*; and in the conjugation of verbs, *je rends*, *tu aimes*, *tu mangeais*, *tu aimas*, &c.; and also in *alors*, *toujours*, *depuis*, *des*, *dès* (*dès que*, *tandis que*), and most words in common use: *bas*, *cas*, *repas*, *repos*, *trépas*, *tapis*, *souris*, *divers*, *avis*, *os*, *mœurs*, &c. As the mark of the plural it is always silent. When a word terminating in a silent *s* is followed immediately by a word beginning with a vowel, or mute *h*, the final *s* is drawn over to the initial vowel, and the soft sound is given to it: *vous avez*, pronounced *voo zavey* (*a* as in *fat*—*ey* as in *they*).

S final is sounded in *as*, *agnus*, *aloës*, *bibus*, *bis*, *blocus*, *chorus*,

Choléra-morbus, dervis, florès, fœtus or fétus, gratis, jadis, laps, lapis, les lis, la Lys (a river), *maïs, métis, orémus, ours, plus que, plus-que-parfait* (but in *plus, plus de, &c.*, it is mute), *pathos, relaps, rébus, sens* (but it is mute in *sens commun*), *sinus, en sus, les us, vasistas, virus, vis, tournevis*, and in all Latin words not in common use. It is also heard in Greek, Latin, and other foreign proper names: *Amadis, Atlas, Athos, Délos, Brutus, Rubens, Gil Blas, Las Casas, &c.*, and in *Rheims* and *Sens*.

The *s* ought never to be sounded when it is not written; it is a most vulgar error, for instance, to interpose an *s* between *quatre* and *yeux*, in the locution *entre quatre yeux*.

Sh and *sch* are both pronounced like the English *sh*. *Sc*, followed by *e* or *i*, is pronounced at the beginning of words, like a simple sharp *s*: *scène, science*; in the middle of words as double *s*: *effervescence, susception, viscère*. But before *a, o, u*, and *l, r*, the *sc* is sounded *sk*: *scapulaire, sclérotique, scribe, scolie*.

T sounds as in English.

Ti, except when preceded by *s* or *x*, in which case both consonants are distinctly sounded, is pronounced like *sce* in the English word *scene*—1. when followed by a mute *e*: *democratie, inertie, &c.*; except *partie, repartie*:—2. when followed by *a, eux, al, el, en, ent, on, us, um*: *il balbutia, ambitieux, partial, partiel, Dioclétien, patience, patient, action, Curtius, Latium*.

Th is sounded like a simple *t*.

T final is not heard except in the following words: *aconit, apt, aspect, Astaroth, azimuth, bismuth, brut, chut, circonspect, comput, déficit, distinct, dot, exact, fat, fret, Goliath, granit, gratuit, indult, infect, intact, introît, lut, malt, échec et mat, net, occiput, opiat, pat, préterit, rapt, respect, rit, sinciput, spath, subit, succinct, tacet, tact, Thibet, transit, zenith*. Both *s* and *t* are sounded in *Brest, Le Christ, l'est* (east), *lest, l'ouest, test, toast, entre le zist et le zest*.

In *sept* and *huit* the final *t* is mute before consonants; but if the next word begins with a vowel, the final *t* of the numeral is sounded and drawn over to the initial vowel of the next word.

The conjunction *et* is pronounced *ey* as in *they*.

Double *t* is sounded like the simple *t*, except in *atticisme, Atticus, Attique, guttural, pittoresque*.

V has the same sound as in English.

W is not a French letter; it occurs only in a few words of foreign extraction, where it is sounded *v*, except in *wist* and *wisky, wiskey* or *wiski*, where it has the English sound. In *Newton*, the *ew* receives the sound of the French *eu*.

X is generally sounded *ks*.

In words beginning with *ex* followed by a *vowel* or *mute h*, it is pronounced *gz*. The same sound is given to it in *Xante*, *Xantippe*, *Xavier*, *Xénophon*, *Xerxès*, *Ximénès*; the latter, however, is also sometimes pronounced *Sheemayne*.

In *soixante*, and also in *six* and *dix*, when unaccompanied by substantives, it is pronounced like the English *ss* in *bliss*. The same pronunciation is given to it also in the following names of cities: *Aix*, *Aix-la-Chapelle*, *Auxerre*, *Auxonne*, *Bruxelles*, *Luxeuil*.

The final *x* of adjectives (and also of the article *aux*) is silent, except before a *vowel* or a *mute h*, where it is sounded like the English *z* in *zeal*: *deux*, *doux*, *heureux*, &c.; *le deuxième*, pronounced as if written *deuzième*; *deux aunes*, as if written *deuz aunes*; *aux armes*, as if written *auz armes*, &c. *Six* and *dix* follow the same rule, except when unaccompanied by substantives, as has already been mentioned.

X final is silent, except in proper names, and in *borax*, *climax*, *index*, *larynx*, *onyx*, *perplex*, *phénix*, *préfix*, *sphinx*, *storax*, *syrinx*, *thorax*.

In *Don Quixote*, the *x* sounds like the English *sh*.

Z is pronounced like the English *z* in *zone*. It is sounded like *s* at the end of proper names: *Rhodesz*, *Suez*.

Z final is silent in the second person plural of verbs, and in words terminating in *ez*, as *assez* (pronounced *assey*—*ey* as in *they*), *chez*, *nez*.

Z is never doubled in French. The double *z* (*zz*) in words from the Italian retains its Italian pronunciation, or is sounded like a simple *z* by those not acquainted with Italian.

In familiar talk and common reading, the final consonant (with the exception of the final *s*) is rarely drawn over and joined to the initial vowel of the next word: *avant-hier*, *vous aimez à lire*, are generally pronounced *avan-hier*, *vous aimez à lire* (*ahvang-eeair*—*ah* like *a* in *father*; *voo zaim ey ah leer*—*ey* as in *they*, *ah* like *a* in *far*). To pronounce *ahvang teeair*, *voo zaim ey zah leer*, might even be taxed with affectation.

In public speaking and reading, in the pulpit, on the stage, and in declamation, the final consonant is always joined to the initial vowel of the next word, with the exception, however, of a small number of words specified already in the rules on the pronunciation of the consonants. Thus the following lines,—

Un grand homme est partout où se répand sa gloire;

Il faut un intervalle au repos, aux plaisirs.

are pronounced as if written,—

Un gran thomme est partou toù se répand sa gloire;

Il fau tun nintervalle au repo, zaux plaisirs.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

An attentive perusal of the preceding rules on the pronunciation of the French tongue will suffice to show the intelligent student that the *pronunciation* would afford a very indifferent and unreliable guide indeed to the *orthography* of that language. Now it will be readily conceded, that the correct spelling of a language is of at least equal importance with its correct pronunciation; a few general rules and hints on the orthography of the French language may, therefore, not be deemed altogether out of place, even in an elementary work like the present; the more so, as they will be found to bear also on the pronunciation, and, in some degree, even on the gender of nouns. Of course, the rules here given are not intended to be committed to memory, but simply for attentive perusal, and to serve for the purpose of reference.

I. We have seen that the final consonants of most words are silent, and that between some of the so-called nasal vowels there exists a similarity of sound approaching absolute identity. The correct way of spelling and writing words terminating in such silent consonants or nasal vowels may in most cases be learnt by a reference to their derivatives. Thus the adjective *stomacal* shows that the primitive from which it is derived, *estomac*, and which is pronounced *estomah* (*ah* like *a* in *far*), is spelled with a *c* at the end; *bon*, good, and *bond*, skip, bound, are both pronounced *bong*,—the correct spelling of the former is indicated by the feminine *bonne*, that of the latter by the verb *bondir*, to skip, to bound, to gambol, both respectively derived from them; the derivative *famine* indicates the proper final consonant of its primitive *faim*, *sanguin* that of *sang*, *ranger* that of *rang*, *brune* that of *brun*, *combattre* that of *combat*, *projeter* that of *projet*, *champêtre* that of *champ*, *draperie* that of *drap*, *bergère* that of *berger*, *amasser* that of *amas*, *briser* that of *bris*, *vernissier* that of *vernis*, *disposer* that of *dispos*, *fusiller* that of *fusil*, *chatte* that of *chat*, *plate* that of *plat*, *sotte* that of *sot*, &c.

This rule applies to an immense number of words. For reference, a list is here appended of the principal words of which either no derivatives exist, or of which the derivatives fail to indicate the final consonant. (Words occurring in any of the succeeding rules are excluded from this list.)

Abcès, appas, appétit, artichaut, bandit, bosquet, brouillard,

cabinet, canot, carquois, chaos, chasselas, chaux (lime), choix, circuit, conflit, congrès, corps, cotignac, courroux, cours and its compounds, *concours, discours, &c.*, *cric, crucifix, dais, décès, défaut, délit, dépôt, détroit, doigt, effort, endroit, entrepôt, épinards, étang, état, faix* (load, burthen), *fatras, filet, flux* and *reflux, fonds* (land, ground, landed estate), *frais, frimas, galimatias, harnais, héraut* (herald), *héros* (hero), *impôt, intérêt, jais, jus, laquais, legs, lilas, marais, mets, minois, mois, mors* (horse-bit), *nez, nœud, nord, pavot, perdrix, plafond, plâtras, port* (port, harbour), *pus, relais, remords, rempart, renfort, repas, répit, ressort, rez-de-chaussée, riz* (rice), *surcroît, taffetas, toujours, toux, velours, verglas, vieillard, vingt.*

II. All nouns of the feminine gender terminating by sound in *ai* (*ay*), *é, eu, i, oi, ou, u*, are spelled and written with a mute *e* at the end (*aie, ée, eue, ie, oie, oue, ue*); e. g., *baie, abbaye, idée, queue, mairie, proie, proue, rue.*

Exceptions.—^a*paix*:—^bnouns in *té* and *tié*; e. g., *aménité, amitié* (substantives expressing an idea of capacity, and past participles used as substantives, follow the general rule; e. g., *charretée, jetée*):—^c*brebis, fourmi; merci*, pity, compassion, mercy; *nuit, perdrix; souris*, mouse (*souris*, smile, is of the masculine gender):—^d*croix; foi, faith; fois*, time (*foie*, liver, is of the masculine gender), *loi, noix; paroi*, wall; *poix*, pitch (*poids*, weight, and *pois*, pea, are of the masculine gender):—^e*bru, glu, tribu, vertu.*

III. Nouns of dignity and profession, terminating by sound in *a* (like *a* in *far*) are spelled and written with a *t* at the end; e. g., *consulat*. The same rule applies also to a great many derivatives formed by the addition of that termination to a French word; e. g., *soldat* from *solde*, *forçat* from *force*, &c.

IV. All substantives and adjectives terminating by sound in *air*, and which are formed from shorter words, take a mute *e* at the end; e. g., *légonnaire* from *légion*, *fractionnaire* from *fraction*. The termination *iair* (*eeayr*) by sound is written *ière* in substantives of the feminine gender; e. g., *lavandière* (except *pierre*, stone); *iaire* in substantives of the masculine gender: e. g., *bréviaire* (except *cimetière, lierre*).

V. *Ait* terminates *lait, souhait, fait, trait*, and the compounds of the two latter; *et* all other words in *ay*, in which the derivatives indicate a final *t*; e. g., *projet*.

VI. The termination *é* (*ey* as in *they*) by sound, is spelled and written *er* in masculines when the *e* is preceded by *i, y, ill, g, ch*; e. g., *belier, écuyer, bouteiller, verger, rocher*. Exceptions.—*Congé, clergé, duché, évêché, pied, âgé*; and the

past participles used in the capacity of masculine substantives, *allié, débauché, &c.*

VII. The termination *i* (*ee*) by sound is spelled and written *is* in substantives formed from a participle present by a change of the termination (*ant* to *is*) ; e. g., *coloris* from *colorant* ; in *débris, devis, châssis, parvis, radis, ris* (laugh, reef), *ris-de-veau* (sweetbread) ; and in words where the derivatives indicate the final *s*.

VIII. The termination *au* is found in *étau, landau, pilau, sarrau*, and in substantives where the final sound *o* is preceded by a vowel ; e. g., *fléau, tuyau*. Exceptions.—*Duo, cacao, chariot, imbroglio, loriot, trio*. The termination *eau* is found in substantives and adjectives in *o*, where the derivation indicates the presence of an *e* ; e. g., *tonneau (tonne), nouveau (nouvel)*.

IX. The nasal sound *in* (*eng*) at the beginning of a word is written *in* or *im* (the latter before *b* and *p* : *m* being universally used instead of *n* before *b, m*, and *p* ; e. g., *embellir, emmener, empire*. Exceptions.—*Bonbon, bonbonnière, embonpoint*) ; e. g., *insecte, impoli*. Exception.—*Ainsi*.

X. The nasal sounds *en* and *em* (see the preceding rule) are found at the beginning of verbs ; e. g., *engager, embrasser*. Exceptions.—*Ambitionner, ambler, ambrer, amplier, amplifier, amputer, ancrer, anticiper, antidater, antidoter*. *En* is used in substantives terminating by sound in *antion* (angseeong) ; e. g., *dimension, prévention*. Exception.—*Expansion*. And also in verbs terminating by sound in *andre* (angder) ; e. g., *rendre*. Exceptions.—*Répandre, épandre*. *An* is used in the middle of words before *g*, and before and after *ch* ; e. g., *manger, épanchement, chanteur*. Exceptions.—*Venger, pencher*, and the derivatives of these verbs. *Ment* terminates all substantives formed from a verb ; e. g., *avancement*, from *avancer*.*

XI. The sound *indre* (*engder*) in the infinitive of verbs is written *eindre* ; e. g., *ceindre*. Exceptions. — *Contraindre, craindre, plaindre*. *Vaincre* and *convaincre* are also spelt *ain*.

XII. *Ance* terminates substantives formed from a participle present ; e. g., *résistance*, from *résistant*. *Ence* terminates substantives not formed from a participle present ; e. g., *innocence*. There are, however, many exceptions from this rule ; e. g., *déférence, existence, &c.* (from *déférant, existant, &c.*), *aisance, balance, circonstance, enfance, &c.* *Anse* terminates *anse* (handle, creek), *danse, panse* (paunch), *transe, il panse* (—une plaie, he

* The words *aimant* and *calmant* not being, properly speaking, substantives formed from verbs, cannot be regarded as exceptions from this rule.

dresses a wound—*un cheval*, he grooms a horse). *Ense* terminates *défense*, *dense*, *dépense*, *dispense*, *immense*, *intense*; *il compense*, *il dépense*, *il dispense*, *il encense*, *il offense*, *il pense*, *il récompense*.

XIII. The sound *sion* (seeong) is rendered by—^a *sion* in *appréhension*, *ascension*, *dimension*, *expansion*, *extension*, *passion*, *pension*, *suspension*; in all words where the termination *sion* is preceded by *l* or *r*; e. g., *répulsion*, *version*. Exceptions.—*assertion*, *désertion*, *insertion*, *portion*:—^b *ssion* in words terminating in *ession*, *mission*, *cussion*; e. g., *rétrocession*, *permission*, *percussion*:—^c *xion* in *complexion*, *connexion*, *flexion* and ^{*}its compounds, *fluxion*:—^d *tion* in all other words, except *suspicion*.

XIV. The terminations *eur* and *our* are respectively given to all substantives, both masculine and feminine, terminating in those sounds; *le directeur*, *la peur*, *le jour*, *la tour* (tower). Exceptions.—*Beurre*, *demeure*, *heure*, *leurre*, *bourre*, *bravoure*; and some in *s*, as *ours* (bear), *velours*, *rebours*, &c.

XV. The sound *ir* (eer) of the infinitive of verbs is rendered by *ire* in those verbs which form their present participle in *vant* or *sant* (pronounced *zant*); e. g., *écrire*, participle present *écrivant*; *dire*, participle present *disant*. Exception.—*Servir*. By *ir* in all other verbs, except *bruire*, *frir*, *maudire*, *rire*, *sourire*.

XVI. *Oir* (o-ar) is used—^a in all verbs terminating in that sound; e. g., *voir*, *recevoir*, &c. Exceptions.—*Boire*, *croire*:—^b in all substantives of the masculine gender formed from a participle present (by changing *ant* into *oir*); e. g., *rasoir* (*rasant*):—^c in *dortoir*, *espoir*, *noir*, *soir*. All other words terminating in that sound are written *oire*; e. g., *armoire*, *mangeoire*, &c.

XVII. *Atte* is found in *chatte*, *datte*, *il flatte*, *il gratte*, *latte*, *natte*, *patte*; *itte* in *quitte*, *il quitte*, *il acquitte*; *outte* in *goutte*; *utte* in *butte*, *hutte*, *lutte*. All other words terminating respectively in these sounds are written with *ate*, *ite*, *oute*, *ute*; e. g., *savate*, *conduite*, *route*, *chute*.

XVIII. *J* is used before *a*, *o*, *u*; e. g., *jambe*, *joie*, *jument*, except in *gai* (jay), *géole*. *G* before *e* and *i*; e. g., *gencive*, *gigot*, except in *je*, *jeter*, *jeu*, *jeudi*, *jeune* (young), *jeûne* (fast, fasting), *majesté*, *majeur*, and their derivatives.

XIX. The verbs in *quer* keep the *qu* throughout the conjugation; but in the substantives and adjectives formed from them, the *qu* is changed to *c*; e. g., *provoquer*, *provoquant*, *provoqué*, *nous provoquons*; *provocation*, *communication*, *communicable*, *un fabricant*, *vacation*, *vacant*. Exceptions.—*Attaquable*, *critiquable*, *croquant* (spunger), *immanquable*, *marquant*, *remarquable*, *risquable*.

XX. The derivatives formed from a primitive ending in a consonant usually double that final consonant; e. g., *amas*, *amasser*; *fer*, *ferrer*, &c. There are, however, many exceptions from this rule.

XXI. The consonants *b*, *d*, *g*, are doubled respectively only in *abbaye*, *abbé*, *gibbeux*, *gibbosité*, *rabbin*, *sabbat*; *addition*, *adducteur*, *adduction*, *reddition*; *agglomérer*, *agglutiner*, *aggraver*, *suggérer*, and the derivatives of these several words.

XXII. The other consonants are doubled in the words beginning with—

Ac: *accabler*. Exceptions.—*Acabit*, *acacia*, *académie*, *acagner*, *acajou*, *acanthé*, *acare*, *acariâtre*, *acolyte*, *aconit*, *acoquiner*, *acoustique*, *acquérir*, *acquiescer*, *acquitter*, *âcre* (sharp, tart), *acre* (acre), the derivatives, a few terms of science which are very rarely used, and all words where the *ac* is followed by *t*.

Oc: *occuper*. Exceptions.—*Ocre*, *oculaire*, *oculiste*.

Af: *affection*. Exceptions.—*Afin*, *Afrique*, *afistoler*.

Ef: *effacer*. Except *éfaufiler*.

Dif: *diffamer*.

Of: *offense*.

Suf: *suffire*. And also *biffer*, *bouffe*, *bouffer*, *bouffette*, *bouffir*, *bouffon*, *buffet*, *buffle*, *buffetin*, *chiffe*, *chiffre*, *coffin*, *coffre*, *gauffre*, *greffe*, *griffe*, *mafflé*, *muffle*, *piffre*, *raffermer*, *raffiner*, *raffoler*, *raffolir*, *siffler*, *souffler*, *souffrir*, *taffetas*, *tassia*, *truffe*, *truffer*, and their derivatives.

Al: *allure*. Exceptions.—*Alambic*, *alan*, *alarguer*, *alarme*, *alègre*, *alène*, *alentour*, *les alentours*, *alépine*, *alérion*, *alerte*, *alevin*, *alexandrin*, *alezan*, *alèze*, *alibi*, *aliboron*, *alidade*, *aliéner*, *aligner*, *aliment*, *alinéa*, *aliquote*, *aliter*, *alizier*, *aloès*, *aloi*, *alors*, *alose*, *alouette*, *alourdir*, *aloyage*, *aloyau*, *alumine*, *alun*, their derivatives, and a few scientific terms little in use.

Il: *illustre*. Exceptions.—*Iliade*, *île*, *iliaque*, *îlot*, *ilote*.

**Col*: *colline*. Exceptions.—*Colature*, *colégataire*, *coléoptère*, *colère*, *coleret*, *colibri*, *colicitant*, *colifichet*, *colimaçon*, *colin-maillard*, *colique*, *colis*, *colisée*, *colombe*, *colon*, *colonie*, *colonel*, *colonne*, *colophane*, *coloquinte*, *colorer*, *coloris*, *colosse*, *colostre*, *colure*, and their derivatives.

Com: *commentaire*. Exceptions.—*Comédie*, *comessation*, *comestible*, *comète*, *comices*, *cominge*, *comique*, *comitat*, *comité*, and their derivatives.

Im: *immobile*. Exceptions.—*Image*, *imaginer*, *iman*, *imiter*, and their derivatives.

Ap: *applaudir*. Exceptions.—*Apaiser*, *apanage*, *aparté*, *apathie*, *apercevoir*, *apercher*, *apéritif*, *apertement*, *apétisser*,

api, apiquer, apitoyer, aplaner, aplanir, aplatir, aplets, aplomb, apocalypse, apocryphe, apogée, Apollon, apologie, apologue, apoplexie, apostasie, apostér, apostille, apostolique, apostrophe, apothéose, apothicaire, apôtre, apurer, their derivatives, and a few terms of science very little in use.

Oppò : opportun. Exception.—*Opodeldoc.*

Oppr : opprobre. Words in which the *op* is followed by any other letter except *o* and *r*, do not double the consonant *p*; e. g., *opinion*.

Sup : supporter. Exceptions.—*Superbe, supérieur, supin, suprême*, and their derivatives; the compounds with *super*.

Ar : arrêt. Exceptions.—*Arabe, arable, arac, araignée, aramber, araser, aratoire, are, arène, aréole, Aréopage, arer, arête, aride, Arien, ariès, ariette, aristarque, aristocrate, arithmétique, aromatique, aronde, aruspice*, and their derivatives.

Cor : corrompre. Exceptions.—*Corail, coreligionnaire, coriace, coriandre, corinthen, corollaire, corolle, coronal, coryphée*, and their derivatives, and also a few scientific terms very little in use.

Ir : irrational. Exceptions.—*Irascible, ire, iris, ironie, iroquois*, and their derivatives.

At : attacher. Exceptions.—*Atelier, atermoyer, athée, athénée, athlète, atinter, atome, atonie, atourner, atours, atout, atrabilaire, âtre, atroce*, and their derivatives.

The consonant *r* is doubled also in the future and conditional of the verbs *courir, envoyer, mourir, pouvoir, quérir, voir*, and their compounds; e. g., *nous mourrons, vous verrez, nous enverrons*, &c.

Instead of doubling the consonant *q*, a *c* is put before it in some words, as in *acquit, acquitter, acquiescer, acquérir*, and their derivatives.

The consonants are not doubled—^a after a mute *e*; e. g., *venir, il renouvella*, &c. (this rule, however, is not without exceptions):—^b after a vowel marked with an accent; e. g., *épître*:—^c after a nasal sound; e. g., *honteux*:—^d between two vowels of the same name; e. g., *malade*: (there are, however, many exceptions from this rule):—^e after a compound vowel (*ai, ou, &c.*); e. g., *plaire* (from this rule, also, there are many exceptions).

ON THE USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

The subject of this paragraph may be dismissed with a mere passing remark, as the practice of the two languages differs but little in this respect; still it may be useful to observe, that the

French do not write the personal pronoun *je* (I) with a capital letter; and the names of nations and sects only when used to designate the nation or sect collectively; e. g., *les Anglais ont remporté une glorieuse victoire sur les Russes*, the English have gained a glorious victory over the Russians; but *un anglais*, an Englishman; *des français*, Frenchmen;—*les Protestants*, the Protestants; but *un protestant*, *des protestants*.

ON THE USE OF THE ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

The Accents.

We make use in French of three accents, viz. the *acute* (*l'accent aigu*) ('), the *grave* (*l'accent grave*) (`), and the *circumflex* (*l'accent circonflex*) (^). The *acute* accent is placed over the vowel *e* when it has the *pure* or *acute* sound (*ey* as in *they*), and stands at the end of a syllable; e. g., *bonté*, *vérité* (*vé-ri-té*), *abrégé* (*a-bré-gé*), *mépriser* (*mé-pris-er*). In this latter word the second *e*, though having the acute sound, is not marked with the accent, because it is not the final letter of the syllable.

The *grave* accent is placed on the broad *e* (pronounced *ay* as in *may*) standing at the end of a syllable, or preceding the final *s*; e. g., *frère* (*frè-re*), *décès* (*dé-cès*).

REMARK.—The *e* is broad whenever it closes a syllable and is followed by a consonant and a mute *e*; e. g., *fidèle*, *il espère*. Except—nouns substantive in *é*; e. g., *siège*, *sortilège*; the interrogative forms *eussé-je?* *parlé-je?* &c. and the exclamations *puissé-je!* *dussé-je!*

The *grave* accent is placed also on the prepositions *à* and *dès* to distinguish them respectively from the verb *a* (third person singular present of *avoir*, to have) and from the contracted article *des*; on the adverbs *là* and *où*, to distinguish the former from the article or pronoun *la*, the latter from the conjunction *ou*; and on the following words: *çà*, *deçà*, *en deçà*, *déjà*, *holà*, *voilà*.

The *circumflex* accent serves to lengthen the sound of the vowel on which it is placed; it is used mostly in cases where a letter has been suppressed; e. g., *âge*, *flûte*, *épître*, which were formerly written *aage*, *fluste*, *épistre*. Thus it is placed over the long *a* before *ch* or the articulated *t* (i. e. *t* retaining its proper sound, as in *baton*, *satin*); e. g., *tâche*, task; *pâture*, pasture, provender, food;—over the last *e* but one of the words ending in *eme*, sounded *aym*; e. g., *suprême* (except the ordinal

numbers *deuxième, troisième, quatrième*, &c., in which the sound of the *e* is not long);—over the *i* of the verbs in *aître* and *ôître*, in all tenses where that vowel is followed by *t*; e. g., *il naît, elle décroîtra*;—over the *o* preceding the finals *le, me, ne*; e. g., *rôle, fantôme, cône*;—over the possessive pronouns *le nôtre, le vôtre*;—over the first and second person plural of the preterite definite; e. g., *nous partâmes, vous punîtes, nous reçûmes, vous rendîtes*;—and over the third person singular imperfect subjunctive; e. g., *qu'il achetât, finît, conçût, vendît*;—over the *u* of the adjectives *mûr, sûr*.

The *circumflex* is placed also as a mark of distinction on the participle past of the verbs *croître, devoir, redevoir, mouvoir*, but only when used in the masculine singular: *crû, dû, redû, mû*. Some grammarians place the circumflex also on *tû*, participle past of *taire*.

The Apostrophe.

The *apostrophe* (') denotes the suppression (*elision*) of one of the vowels, *a, e, i*, effected in order to avoid an unharmonious collision of two vowels.

The vowel *a* is elided in *la* (article and pronoun) before a vowel or mute *h*; e. g., *l'amitié, l'hirondelle, je l'aime*, I love her (instead of *je la aime*).

The vowel *e* is elided—^a in *je, me, te, se, le, ce* (pronoun), *de, ne, que, jusque*, before a vowel or mute *h*; e. g., *j'adoue, il m'aime, il n'arrive pas, c'est fait*, &c.:—^b in *lorsque, puisque, quoique*, only before *il, elle, on, un, une*; e. g., *lorsqu'il marche, puisqu'elle s'en va, quoiqu'on se soit décidé*, &c.:—^c in *entre* and *presque* only when they form a component part of another word; e. g., *presqu'île, entr'acte*:—^d in *quelque* only before *un* and *autre*:—^e in *grand' chambre, grand' chère, grand' chose, grand' merci, grand' mère, grand' messe, grand' peine, grand' peur, grand' salle*.

The vowel *i* is elided only in the conjunction *si* before *il* and *ils*; e. g., *s'il me donne, s'ils voyaient*.

The Cedilla.

The *cedilla* (*la cedille*) (*,*), placed under the consonant *c*, before *a, o, u*, imparts to that consonant the accidental *s*-like sound which it has before *e* and *i*; it is used in words of which the etymological parentage demands or indicates the soft sound of the *c*; e. g., *garçon* (gars), *français* (France), *façade* (face), *reçu, reçoit* (recevoir, recette), *menaçant* (menace, menacer), &c.

The Diæresis.

The *diæresis* (*le tréma*) (¨) is a double dot placed horizontally over the vowels *e, i, u*, when preceded by another vowel not belonging to the same syllable with them, and which might, but for this mark, be confounded in a common sound with them; e. g., *Noël* (Christmas), *naïf*, *Moïse*, *haïr*, *Saül*, *Esaiï*, which are pronounced respectively, *no-el*, *na-if*, *Mo-ise*, *ha-ir*, *Sa-ul*, *Esa-u*, and not *næl*, *nef*, *Moase*, *hère*, *Sól*, *Esó*, as one would be led to pronounce them but for the diæresis over the second vowel.

The *diæresis* is also placed over the mute *e* after *u* preceded by *g*, to denote that the *u* is a distinct letter, and not inserted merely for the purpose of rendering the *g* hard before the *e* (see the rules on pronunciation); e. g., *ciguë*, *contiguë*, *exiguë*, *aiguë*, which are pronounced *cig-u*, *conti-gu*, *exi-gu*, *ai-gu*.

The *diæresis* must never be used to replace the accent over the accented *e* (*é* or *è*); therefore do not write *poëte*, *poëme*, *Chloë*, *poésie*, but *poète*, *poème*, *Chloé*.

It is a practice with some to replace the letter *y* by *i* marked with a diæresis (*ï*), and to write *envoïer*, *moïen*, instead of *envoyer*, *moyen*. This is decidedly wrong.

The Hyphen.

The *hyphen*, or *mark of union* (*le trait d'union*) (-), serves to connect two or several words. It is used—^a (as in English) to connect the component parts of certain compounds; e. g., *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow; *s'entre-saluer*, to salute one another; *couvre-chef*, kerchief (turban); *contre-amiral*, rear-admiral, &c.; and of certain adverbial locutions; e. g., *sur-le-champ*, *tout-à-coup*, *long-temps*, *au-dedans*, *par-dessus*, &c.; and also certain proper names; e. g., *Quint-Curce*, *Michel-Ange*, *Syro-Phénicien*, *Bas-Rhin*, *Seine-et-Oise*, *Mont-blanc*, *Seine-inférieure*, *Terre-neuve*, *Châlons-sur-Marne*, *Cap de Bonne-Espérance*, &c.:—^b between the verb and the pronouns *je*, *moi*, *tu*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*, *y*, *en*, *ce*, *on*, whenever these pronouns, in the capacity of either subject or complement, happen to stand *after* the verb; e. g., *reçois-je?* *laisse-moi*, *tais-toi*, *finis-tu?* *puissions-nous!* *allez-y*, *donnez-en*, *veut-on?* &c.; when there are two pronouns together placed in this condition, two *hyphens* are used; e. g., *porte-le-leur*; but no hyphen is used when the pronoun is not the complement of the verb preceding it, but of a verb in the infinitive mood

following after; e. g., *faites le lire*, have it read, cause it to be read—the pronoun *le* is here the complement of *lire*, whereas in *faites-le lire*, make him read, the pronoun is the complement of *faites*:—^c both before and after the euphonic letter *t*, inserted between verb and pronoun; e. g., *donne-t-il? chantera-t-elle?* in *va t'en*, go away, be off, no hyphen is used, as the *t* here is the pronoun *te*, and not a mere euphonic letter:—^d before or after *ci* and *là*, inseparably connected with a substantive, pronoun, preposition, or adverb; e. g., *cette femmi-ci, ces hommes-là, là-dessus, ci-devant, celui-ci, celle-là, &c.*:—^e to join *très* to the adjective or adverb which follows, and *même* and *mêmes* to the pronoun preceding; e. g., *très-utile, très-sagement; lui-même, elles-mêmes*:—^f lastly, the *hyphen* serves in French numeration to replace the conjunction *et*, and; e. g., *dix-sept, vingt-deux, cinquante-cinq, soixante-dix-neuf, &c.*, instead of *dix et sept, vingt et deux, cinquante et cinq, soixante et dix et neuf, &c.*, expressions which are not used in French. A hyphen is also placed, in obedience to long-established practice, between *quatre* and *vingt* in the numbers *quatre-vingts*, eighty, four-score, *quatre-vingt-un, &c.*

The Parenthesis.

The *parenthesis* (*la parenthèse*) () is used for the same purpose in French as in English.

Punctuation or Pointing.

The punctuation in French agrees pretty closely with the English. The dissimilarities are, moreover, rather of a debatable nature, and such as cannot well be discussed in the pages of an elementary work like the present.

The names of the French marks of pointing are—

La virgule (,), comma.

Le point-virgule (;), semicolon.

Les deux points (:), colon.

Le point (.), full stop.

Le point interrogatif (?), point or note of interrogation.

Le point exclamatif (!), point or note of exclamation.

CHAPTER I.

THE ARTICLE AND THE SUBSTANTIVE.

Preliminary Remarks.

THE French language has only two *genders*, the *masculine* and the *feminine*: all nouns representing inanimate things, and which in English are of the *neuter* gender, being distributed between these two, mostly according to their respective terminations, as we shall hereafter see.

We have in French, as in English, two *numbers*, the *singular* and the *plural*.

The French language has no *cases*; the simple *nominative form* of nouns serves equally to denote the *accusative* or *objective case* (*direct regimen* or *direct complement*), whilst the *genitive* or *possessive*, and *dative* or *terminative cases*, (*indirect regimen* or *indirect complement*), are formed by means of prepositions, and more particularly by means of the prepositions *de*, *of*, and *à*, *to*. Still in this point the two languages differ only in so far as the *possessive case* is concerned, for which the *English* language has an inflective form (*s* preceded by an apostrophe, the latter indicating simply the elision of the *e* of the old Saxon inflection *es*), of which the use is, moreover, almost exclusively confined to nouns representing animate beings.

A. *The Article.*

We have in French only *one* article, which is *le* for nouns of the *masculine*, *la* for nouns of the *feminine* gender. The plural *les* serves for both genders; e. g., *le lion*, the lion; *la souris*, the mouse; *les soldats*, the soldiers; *les femmes*, the women.

If the noun before which the article *le* or *la* stands, happens to commence with a *vowel* or a *mute h*, the *e* or *a* of the article is thrown out or *elided*, and the *elision* marked by an apostrophe; e. g., *l'homme*, *l'esprit*, *l'aménité*, *l'histoire*, instead of *le homme*, *le esprit*, *la aménité*, *la histoire*.

The prepositions *de* and *à* are respectively *contracted* and blended into one word with the article *les*, making *des* for *de les*, and *aux* for *à les*. The same *contraction* takes place between the preposition *de* and *à* and the article *le* before nouns commencing with a *consonant* or an *aspirated h*; *du* being substituted for *de le*, *au* for *à le*. But before nouns commencing with a *vowel* or a *mute h*, no such contraction takes place, as regards the article *le*, or rather its elided form *l'*. No contraction takes place if the adjective *tout*, all, happens to intervene between the preposition *de* or *à*, and the article *le* or *les*.

EXAMPLES.

le père, the father.

du père (instead of *de le père*), of the father.

au père (instead of *à le père*), to the father.

les pères, the fathers.

des pères (instead of *de les pères*), of the fathers.

aux pères (instead of *à les pères*), to the fathers.

le héros, the hero.

du héros (instead of *de le héros*), of the hero.

au héros (instead of *à le héros*), to the hero.

les héros, the heroes.

des héros (instead of *de les héros*), of the heroes.

aux héros (instead of *à les héros*), to the heroes.

l'effort, the effort.

de l'effort, of the effort.

à l'effort, to the effort.

les efforts, the efforts.

des efforts, of the efforts.

aux efforts, to the efforts.

l'honneur, the honor.

de l'honneur, of the honor.

à l'honneur, to the honor.

les honneurs, the honors.

des honneurs, of the honors.

aux honneurs, to the honors.

la mère, the mother.

de la mère, of the mother.

à la mère, to the mother.

les mères, the mothers.

des mères, of the mothers.

aux mères, to the mothers.

la hache, the hatchet.

de la hache, of the hatchet.

à la hache, to the hatchet.

les haches, the hatchets.

des haches, of the hatchets.

aux haches, to the hatchets.

l'abeille, the bee.

de l'abeille, of the bee.

à l'abeille, to the bee.

les abeilles, the bees.

des abeilles, of the bees.

aux abeilles, to the bees.

l'horloge, the clock.

de l'horloge, of the clock.

à l'horloge, to the clock.

les horloges, the clocks.

des horloges, of the clocks.

aux horloges, to the clocks.

tout le monde, everybody.
de tout le monde, of everybody.
à tout le monde, to everybody.

tous les officiers.
de tous les officiers.
à tous les officiers.

toutes les vertus.
de toutes les vertus.
à toutes les vertus.

USE OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is used much more extensively in French than in English. Of course, a complete set of rules applying to every imaginable case where the article is to be used or omitted, cannot be given in an elementary work like the present: moreover, this is a subject on which the student may derive more solid instruction from practice than could be imparted to him by precept. Still a few general rules, bearing more especially on those points in which the French practice differs more or less from the English, may be of service.

a. Use of the Article.

I. The article is required in French before all *common nouns* used in a *definite* sense; i. e., when designating a *genus*—in other words, when representing the totality of the objects respectively denominated by them; e. g., *l'homme est mortel*, man is mortal; *l'homme* signifies here the totality of mankind; or when designating a *species*—in other words, when representing the totality of a certain specified class of the objects respectively denominated by them; e. g., *les enfants studieux sont chéris de leurs maîtres*, studious children are beloved by their masters; *les enfants studieux* signifies here *all studious children*; or, finally, when designating a *particular individual being or thing*; e. g., *le père est aimé de ses enfants*, the father is beloved by his children; *la femme que vous avez vue hier*, the woman whom you saw yesterday; *le livre que j'ai acheté*, the book which I have bought.

The article is accordingly required also before nouns of *materials* when employed in a definite sense; e. g., *le fer est plus utile que l'or*, iron is more useful than gold; *aimez vous le café ?* do you like coffee? and before *abstract nouns* when employed in a definite sense; e. g., *l'amour est aveugle*, love is blind; *les maladies de la peau sont souvent bien difficiles à guérir*, diseases of the skin are often very difficult to cure, &c.

II. The article is used in French also before nouns of measure, weight, and number, where the *indefinite article* *a* or

an is used in English; e. g., *il vend son vin cinq francs la bouteille*, he sells his wine at five francs a bottle; *la viande se vend sept sous la livre*, meat sells (is sold) at seven sous (threepence-halfpenny) a pound; *les pommes se vendent quatre sous la douzaine*, apples sell (are sold) at twopence a dozen; *deux francs la pièce*, two francs a piece, &c.

REMARK.—The denominations of the divisions of time take the preposition *par* before them in cases where the English use *a* or *per*; e. g., *Je lui donne deux écus par semaine*, I give him two dollars a (or per) week; *il jouit d'un revenu de dix mille livres sterling par an*, he has (he enjoys a revenue of) ten thousand pounds a year (*per annum*). The English expressions (so much) *per* ticket or *a* ticket, *per* head or *a* head, *per* man or *a* man, are rendered in French by (*tant*) *par billet*, *par tête*, *par homme*. •

III. The article is used also before adjectives, &c., employed as substantives; e. g., *le pauvre est quelquefois plus heureux que le riche*, poor people (the poor) are sometimes happier than rich people (the rich); *les si et les mais*, the ifs and buts; *les oui et les non*, the yeas and noes; *les car, les pourquoi, les comment, les on dit, les que, les qui*, &c.

IV. The article is put before names of countries, provinces, rivers, mountains, and winds; e. g., *l'Allemagne*, Germany; *la Pologne*, Poland; *l'Angleterre*, England, &c.; *la Tamise*, the Thames; *le Rhône, la Saône, la Seine, le Danube*, &c.; *les Alpes, les Pyrénées, le Vésuve*, &c.; *l'aquilon*, the north-wind, &c. The four divisions of the globe also take the article before them,—*l'Asie, l'Amérique, l'Afrique, l'Europe*. The article is used also before the names of some towns (principally French); e. g., *le Havre, la Rochelle, la Ferté, le Perche, la Flèche, la Haye, la Corogne*, &c.; and before the names of some poets and artists (principally Italian); e. g., *le Tasse, le Dante, l'Arioste, le Titien, le Poussin*, &c.

Exceptions.—The names of countries take no article after the preposition *en*; e. g., *en Amérique, en Espagne, il est en France*, he is in France, &c.; nor after the preposition *de*, preceded by *aller, sortir, venir, revenir*; e. g., *Je viens d'Espagne, il revient de Russie, il va de Prusse en Belgique*, &c. (We say, however, *il revient de l'Amérique, de l'Asie, de l'Afrique, de l'Europe*; and some grammarians prefer saying, *je viens de l'Espagne*, instead of *d'Espagne*; *de l'Italie*, instead of *d'Italie*, &c.): nor after *de* when that preposition serves to join the name of the country in the capacity of an adjective complement to the substantive preceding it; e. g., *l'empereur de Russie*, the Emperor of Russia (the Russian Emperor); *la noblesse d'Angleterre*, the nobility of England (the English nobility); *les vins*

de France, the wines of France (the French wines), &c. But where the name of the country happens to be preceded by an adjective, the article must be used; e.g., *le royaume de la Grande-Bretagne*, &c.

V. The article is used in French before nouns of *title* or *dignity*, when *preceding* the name to which they are affixed; e.g., *la reine Tomyris*; *je parle du Maréchal Castellane*; *écrivez au commissaire de police Renard*, &c. But the article is omitted in all cases where the *name precedes* the noun of title or dignity affixed to it; e.g., *Nicolas, empereur de Russie*; *je tiens ce billet de M. Castellane, maréchal de France*; *j'ai vu la réponse qu'il a reçue de M. Renard, commissaire de Police*, &c.

VI. The articles *le, la, les*, are used before the adverbs, *plus, mieux, moins*, preceding an adjective whenever an idea of comparison is suggested; e.g., *de tous ces despotes, Nicolas est certes le moins méprisable*, of all these despots, Nicholas is surely the least despicable; *des trois pièces que j'ai vues hier au Gymnase, celle de M. Musset est la plus spirituelle*, of the three plays which I saw yesterday at the Gymnase, that of M. Musset is the most witty; "*Ivanhoe*" et "*Quentin Durward*" *sont parmi les plus intéressants des romans de Walter Scott*, "*Ivanhoe*" and "*Quentin Durward*" are among the most interesting of Sir Walter Scott's novels. In all such sentences the article agrees with a substantive understood; thus, in the examples here given, the article agrees respectively with the substantives, *despote, pièce, roman*. But where it is simply intended to denote a quality carried to the highest point, without suggesting any idea of a comparison with other persons or things, the invariable *le* alone is used; e.g., *votre sœur ne pleure pas, lors même qu'elle est la plus affligée*, your sister sheds no tears, even when she is most afflicted. The *le* forms here with the *plus (mieux, moins)* an *adverbial locution* which serves to qualify the adjective preceded by it.

REMARK.—*Le plus, le mieux, le moins*, are always *adverbial locutions*, and remain accordingly invariable, whenever they relate respectively to a *verb* or *adverb*; e.g., *ce qui nous frappe le plus dans la vie de cet homme, c'est son désintéressement*, what strikes us most in the life of that man is his disinterestedness; *il est difficile de dire laquelle des deux sœurs a agi le plus noblement dans cette affaire*, it is difficult to say which (or whether) of the two sisters has acted most nobly in this matter.

VII. *Du, des, de la, de l'*, are used before common nouns when employed in a *partitive* sense, and *not preceded* by an adjective; e.g., *il a de la farine*, he has (some) flour; *nous avons de l'argent*, we have (some) money; *a-t-il des amis?* has

he (any) friends? *vous avez des ennemis*, you have (some) enemies; *donnez moi du pain*, give me some bread. But the article is omitted, and the simple preposition *de* used, whenever the common noun employed in a partitive sense happens to be preceded by an adjective; e. g., *on a appelé de nombreux témoins*, numerous witnesses have been called; *nous avons bu d'excellent bière*, we have drunk excellent beer, &c.

REMARK.—Certain compounds, as *petit-maitre*, fop, dandy, beau; *petits-pois*, green peas; *petit-pâté*, pasty; *sage-femme*, widow; *basse-cour*, poultry yard; *bon-mot*, witticism, jest; *grand homme*, great man, man of superior genius; *petite-maison*, madhouse, bedlam; *jeunes gens*, young folks, &c., take the article before them when employed in a partitive sense; e. g., *l'Italie a produit des grands hommes*, *l'Espagne des grands seigneurs*, Italy has produced (some) great men, Spain (some) grandees; *avez vous des petit-pois?* have you any green peas? *non, mais nous avons des petits-pâtés*, no, but we have some pasties; *il y a des petites-maisons en France aussi bien qu'en Angleterre*, there are (some) madhouses in France as well as in England, &c. However, the use of the article in such cases is not to be considered an exception from the rule, as the partitive substantive is here inseparably connected by the meaning with the adjective preceding it, and the two form in fact only one word.

VIII. The article is used exceptionally after *la plupart*, most, the greater part, and *bien*, much, many, in deviation from c, II. a, page 29; e. g., *la plupart des hommes sont sujets à des infirmités*; *il a eu bien du chagrin*; *vous avez vu bien des pays*.

b. Repetition of the Article.

The article must be repeated before every substantive*; e. g., *les ducs, les comtes, et les barons lui ont juré fidélité*, the dukes, counts, and barons, have sworn fealty to him.

The article must be repeated also (as it is in English likewise) before each of two adjectives connected by the conjunction *et*, when they do not qualify one and the same substantive; e. g., *le grand et le petit garçon*, the great and the little boy; this sentence is elliptical, its full expression and meaning being *le grand garçon et le petit garçon*. But where the two adjectives qualify one and the same substantive, there is of course

* The article may be omitted, however, sometimes in an emphatic recital or enumeration of several nouns in succession, and of which the last is usually followed by *tout*, *rien*, *nul*, *personne*, or *chacun*: *Voisins, amis, parents, chacun préfère son intérêt à celui de tout autre*; and sometimes also in sentences introduced by *voici*:—

*Voici trois médecins qui ne se trompent pas :
Gaîté, doux exercice, et modeste repas.*

no occasion to repeat the article; e.g., *la grande et belle femme*, the tall and handsome woman.

c. *Omission or suppression of the Article.*

I. The article is omitted before common nouns when used in a *vague* and *indefinite* sense; i.e., when designating neither a *genus*, nor a *particular species*, nor an *individual being or thing*; e.g., *une montre d'or*, a gold watch; *une maison en bois*, a wooden house; *une querelle d'amis*, a quarrel among friends; *agir avec prudence, avec sagesse*, to act prudently, wisely (with prudence, with wisdom); *agir en ami*, to act as a friend.

II. Accordingly, the article is omitted and the simple preposition *de* used before common nouns, ^a when they happen to be the complement of a *partitive collective*, or of an *adverb of quantity*; e.g., *une foule de pauvres*, a crowd of poor people; *une multitude d'étoiles*, a multitude of stars; *beaucoup de soldats*, many soldiers, a great many soldiers, &c. But the article must be used if the common noun is followed by an incidental sentence imparting to it a more definite signification; e.g., *un grand nombre des soldats qui avaient été renvoyés dans leurs foyers, s'étaient enrôlés de nouveau*, a great many of the soldiers that had been dismissed to their homes had enlisted again; *il lui reste encore beaucoup des pièces d'or qu'il a apportées de la Californie*, he has still left a great many of the golden pieces which he brought from California. ^b When they happen to be the complement of an active verb *accompanied by a negation*; e.g., *ne lui faites pas de reproches*, do not reproach him. But the article must be used if the common noun is followed by an adjective or an incidental sentence imparting to it a more definite signification; e.g., *ne cherchez pas des prétextes frivoles*, do not seek (for) frivolous pretexts; *il ne fait jamais des excuses qui ne soient bien fondées*, he never makes idle and groundless excuses.

III. The article is omitted after the preposition *en*.*

IV. The article is omitted in French before nouns of *relationship*, if standing (in an adjective capacity as it were) after the proper name to which they refer; e.g., *le dauphin épousa Marie Antoinette, fille de Marie Thérèse*, the dauphin married Marie Antoinette, the daughter of Marie Theresa; *Télémaque, fils d'Ulysse*, Telemachus, the son of Ulysses.

* Except in a few locutions where custom has sanctioned its use: *en la présence de Dieu, en l'absence d'un tel, en l'an mil huit cent trente-sept*, &c.

V. The article is omitted also before nouns denoting a *dignity, profession, trade, or occupation*, or a *nation or sect*, when used in an adjective capacity; e.g., *il était berger, et il devint roi*, he was a shepherd, and he became a king; *il vient d'être créé pair du royaume*, he has just been created a peer of the realm; *il est français*, he is a Frenchman; *elle est protestante*, she is a Protestant; *M. Pierce est élu président des États-Unis*, Mr. Pierce is elected President of the United States; *son frère est conseiller d'état*, his brother is a councillor of state; *sa sœur est couturière*, his sister is a sempstress (mantua-maker, dress-maker); *son père était médecin*, his father was a physician; *M. Georges est tailleur*, Mr. Georges is a tailor. However, if the personal subject of the sentence is represented by the pronoun *ce*, the numeral adjective *un, une*, is put before the attributive noun of dignity, &c.; e.g., *c'est un conseiller d'état, c'est un médecin, c'est un catholique, c'est un tailleur, c'est un français*, &c.

VI. The article is omitted in certain proverbial sayings; e.g., *pauvreté n'est pas vice, noblesse oblige*, &c.; and also in certain locutions formed by the combinations of a noun with a *verb*, and more particularly with *faire* and *avoir*; e.g., *avoir faim*, to be hungry; *avoir soif*, to be thirsty; *avoir honte*, to be ashamed; *avoir froid, avoir chaud, avoir besoin, avoir pitié, avoir compassion*, &c.; *faire tort, faire plaisir, faire peur, faire provision, faire profession; donner occasion, donner permission*, &c.; *entendre raison, entendre malice*, &c.; *gagner chemin*, &c.; *mettre ordre, mettre fin*, &c.; *porter bonheur*, &c.; *prendre plaisir, prendre patience, prendre parti*, &c. Locutions of this kind may properly be looked upon in the light of *compound verbs*.

The *English indefinite* article *a* or *an* is mostly rendered in French by the numeral adjective *un, une*. The principal exceptions have been touched upon already in the preceding rules.

B. THE SUBSTANTIVE.

SECT. I. *The Gender.*

It has already been observed, that the French language admits only two genders, viz., the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

It must be granted that this subject, which forms one of the most important branches of French grammar, presents considerable difficulties to the English student. However, these

difficulties are by no means insuperable, and the student may, with a little study and attention, in a comparatively short time, learn to determine the correct gender of forty-nine French nouns out of every fifty, without being obliged to consult the dictionary.

We will proceed here upon the old sound "*divide et impera*" principle, and, in the first place, class all nouns substantive under two heads, viz., names or appellations representing animate beings, and nouns representing inanimate things, and *abstract nouns*.

I. *Names or Appellations of Persons and Animals.*

a. The gender of the names or appellations of *persons* is determined by the natural sex; the names or appellations of *male* persons, and the appellations of titles, dignities, professions, trades, or occupations more exclusively or particularly affected to the *male* sex, are accordingly of the *masculine*; the names or appellations of *female* persons, and the appellations of titles, dignities, professions, or occupations more exclusively or particularly affected to the *female* sex, of the *feminine* gender. The same rule holds good, of course, also with respect to supernal beings.

Exceptions.—*Altesse*, Highness; *Éminence*, Eminence; *Excellence*, Excellency; *Grandeur*, Grace; *Majesté*, Majesty; *patrouille*, patrol; *Sainteté*, Holiness; *Seigneurie*, Lordship (Ladyship); *sentinelle*, sentry (made by some of the masculine gender); and some *collective nouns* relating exclusively to males, such as *armée*, *gendarmerie*, *milice*, &c.,—are of the *feminine* gender; *laidron*, or *laidron*, an ugly girl, and *tendron*, a young lass, are of the *masculine* gender.

For some of the terms of relationship, the French language has, like the English, distinct appellations for the male and female, e. g.:—

Masculine.

le père, father
le frère, brother
l'oncle, uncle
le neveu, nephew

Feminine.

la mère, mother
la sœur, sister
la tante, aunt
la nièce, niece

Plural collective.

les parents, parents.

In some instances the female term of relationship is formed from the male, as *la fille*, daughter, from *le fils*, son; *la cousine*, female cousin, from *le cousin*, male cousin.

As regards *personal appellatives* or *attributives* in general,

those terminating in mute *e* serve equally for the masculine and feminine.

Exceptions.—The following personal appellatives in mute *e*, change their final into *esse* in the feminine; *bonze* (*bonzesse*, rarely used), *borgne*, *chanoine*, *comte*, *diable*, *doge*, *drôle*, *Druide*, *hôte*, *ivrogne*, *Jésuite* (*Jésuitesse*, rarely used), *maire*, mayor (*mairresse*, corresponding to the English mayoress—used sometimes, though improperly); *maître*, *mulâtre*, *ogre*, *nègre*, *pauvre*, *poète* (*poëtesse*, rarely used), *prêtre*, *prince*, *prophète*, *suisse*, *traître*, *vicomte*. *Carme*, a Carmelite monk, makes *Carmelite* in the feminine.

Appellative nouns denoting titles, professions, trades, occupations, qualities, &c., more exclusively appertaining to man, have no feminine. To this class belong, for instance, *artisan*, tradesman, artificer; *assassin*, *charlatan*, quack; *fat*, coxcomb; *écrivain*, writer; *escroc*, sharper, swindler; *médecin*, physician, *partisan*; some nouns in mute *e*, as *adversaire*, opponent; *capitaine*, *collègue*, *duelliste*, *disciple*, *philosophe*, &c.; and many nouns in *eur* and *teur*,* as *agresseur*, *amateur*, virtuoso, connoisseur; *auteur*, *censeur*, *compositeur*, *confesseur*, *défenseur*, defender; *docteur*, *éditeur*, *facteur*, postman; *fossoyeur*, gravedigger; *graveur*, engraver; *imposteur*, *imprimeur*, printer; *ingénieur*, engineer; *laboureur*, ploughman, tiller; *littérateur*, man of letters; *orateur*, *prédicateur*, preacher; *professeur*, *proviseur*, provisor, head-master of a college; *questeur*, questor; *rédacteur*, editor; *régisseur*, manager, stage-manager; *successeur*, *vainqueur*, conqueror, &c.

But most personal appellatives or attributives (substantives or adjectives, as the case may be), in *eur* (and *teur*), which are formed from a participle present by changing *ant* to *eur*, form their feminine by changing the final *r* to *se*, e. g., *danseur*, dancer: *danseuse* (from *dansant*, participle present of *danser*, to dance); *devineur*,† conjuror, diviner, soothsayer: *devineuse* (from *devinant*, participle present of *deviner*, to guess, to divine); *menteur*, liar: *menteuse* (from *mentant*, participle present of *mentir*, to lie); *chanteur*, singer: *chanteuse*‡ (from

* These nouns are usually classed with the *adjectives*; however, as most of them are actual *substantives*, which are simply employed often in an adjective capacity, we have deemed it more appropriate to assign them a place in this chapter.

† The feminine of *devin*, an adjective, frequently used in a substantive capacity, and which has the same meaning as *devineur*, makes *devineresse* in the feminine.

‡ The term *cantatrice* is bestowed more exclusively on public singers of great talent and repute.

chantant, participle present of *chanter*, to sing); *chasseur*, hunter: *chasseuse* * (from *chassant*, participle present of *chasser*, to hunt); *pêcheur*,† fisherman: *pêcheuse* (from *péchant*, participle present of *pêcher*, to fish); *baïlleur*,‡ yawner: *baïlleuse* (from *baïllant*, participle present of *baïller*, to yawn); *demandeur*,§ asker, petitioner, dun: *demandeuse* (from *demandant*, participle present of *demander*, to ask, to require, to beg, to demand); *vendeur*,|| seller, monger, dealer: *vendeuse* (from *vendant*, participle present of *vendre*, to sell); *débiteur*, spreader of news: *débiteuse* (from *débiter*, to utter; but *débiteur*, debtor, makes *débitrice* in the feminine, in obedience to the next rule); &c.

Exceptions.—^a *Défendeur*, defendant, makes *défenderesse* in the feminine; *vengeur*, avenger, makes *vengeresse*. ^b The following in *teur* (formed from a participle present by changing *ant* to *eur*) form their feminine by changing *eur* to *rice* (from a misapplied analogy, in accordance with the next rule): *exécuteur*, *inspecteur*, *inventeur*, *persécuteur*.

Those personal appellatives (substantives or adjectives, as the case may be) in *teur*, which are not formed from participles present by simply changing *ant* to *eur*, form their feminine by changing *eur* to *rice*, e. g., *accusateur*, *accusatrice*; *délateur*, *délatrice*; *spoliateur*, *spoliatrice*; *protecteur*, *protectrice*; *médiateur*, *médiatrice*; *législateur*, *législatrice*; *auditeur*, *auditrice*; *curateur*, *curatrice*, &c.

Abbé, abbot, makes *abbesse*.

Ambassadeur makes *ambassadrice*.

Bachelier,¶ bachelor, makes *bachelette*, damsel.

Duc, duke, makes *duchesse*.

Empereur, makes *impératrice*.

Gouverneur, makes *gouvernante*.

Pair, peer, makes *païresse*.

Quaker makes *quakeresse*.

Roi, king, makes *reine*, queen.

Serviteur makes *servante*.

* The term *chasseresse*, huntress, is used only in the poetic style.

† But *pêcheur*, sinner, from *pêcher*, to sin, makes *pécheresse* in the feminine.

‡ But *baïlleur*, lessor, from *bailler* (*à ferme*), to lease, makes *bailleresse* in the feminine.

§ But *demandeur*, plaintiff, makes *demanderesse* in the feminine.

|| But *vendeur*, vendor or vender (law term), makes *venderesse* in the feminine.

¶ *Bachelier* is no longer used in French in the sense of the English word *bachelor*, which is rendered by *célibataire*, or *garçon*. In French the word *bachelier* is used only in connexion with the terms *ès arts*, *ès lettres*, *ès sciences*, bachelor of arts, of letters, of sciences.

Most of the remaining *personal appellatives* or *attributives* are *adjectives*, used simply in a substantive capacity; the student will accordingly find in the *Chapter on the Adjective*, the required information on the mode of forming the feminine of such nouns.

Additional Remarks.

Enfant is *masculine* when designating a *male*, *feminine* when designating a *female* child. The plural *enfants* is always of the *masculine* gender, even when used to designate an *exclusive* collection of *female* children.

Gens, people, folks, servants, demands the *feminine* gender of the concordants *preceding*, the *masculine* gender of the concordants *following* it; e.g., *les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux*, old people are suspicious; *les gens spirituels ne sont pas toujours les mieux instruits*; *toutes les méchantes gens*, &c. *Tous* is, however, substituted for *toutes* in all cases where this adjective precedes *gens*, either alone or in company with some adjective or adjectives having only one termination, which serves equally for the masculine and feminine; e.g., *tous les gens qui pensent bien*, *tous les gens d'esprit*; *tous les braves gens*, *tous les honnêtes gens*, &c. The adjective preceding *gens* is put in the *masculine* also when that noun conveys to the mind more exclusively the idea of male beings, which is the case more especially in certain compound expressions formed by *gens* with other nouns, with the aid of the preposition *de*, such as *gens de lettres*, literary people, literary men, writers; *gens de robe*, lawyers, magistrates; *gens d'église*, churchmen; *gens d'épée*, *gens de guerre*, military men; *gens d'affaires*, men of business; *gens de loi*, lawyers, &c.; e.g., *certaines gens de lettres*; *quels gens de bien!* &c.

Couple (couple, pair, brace) applied to *persons* is of the *masculine* gender; e.g., *un couple fidèle*, a faithful couple; *un couple de fripons*, a brace of villains, a couple of rogues; applied to animals and things *couple* is of the *feminine* gender; e.g., *une couple d'œufs*, *une couple de poulets*.

b. As regards the names of *animals*, their gender may be learnt from their respective terminations according to the rules which will be found in a subsequent part of this section. All we need remark here is, that the French language has, like the English, distinct appellations for the male and female of some animals; e.g.—

Male.	Female.
<i>bélier</i> , ram ; <i>mouton</i> , wether.	<i>brebis</i> , ewe, sheep.
<i>bouc</i> , he-goat.	<i>chèvre</i> , goat.
<i>bourdon</i> , drone.	<i>abeille</i> , bee.
<i>cerf</i> , stag.	<i>biche</i> , hind.
<i>cheval</i> , horse ; <i>étalon</i> , stallion.	<i>jument</i> , <i>cavale</i> mare.
<i>cochon</i> , pig ; <i>verrat</i> , boar.	<i>truie</i> , sow.
<i>coq</i> , cock.	<i>poule</i> , hen.
<i>jars</i> , gander.	<i>oie</i> , goose.
<i>lièvre</i> , hare.	<i>hase</i> , doe-hare, coney.
<i>sanglier</i> , wild boar.	<i>laie</i> , wild sow.
<i>singe</i> , ape.	<i>guenon</i> , female ape.
<i>taureau</i> , bull ; <i>bouvillon</i> , bullock.	<i>vache</i> , cow ; <i>génisse</i> , heifer.

In the case of some other animals, the female name is formed from the male ; e. g., *âne*, *ânesse* ; *agneau*, *agnelle* ; *chat*, *chatte* ; *chevreuil*, *chevrette* ; *chien*, *chienne* ; *daim*, *daine* ; *faisan*, *faisane* ; *faon*, *faone* ; *lapin*, *lapine* ; *lion*, *lionne* ; *loup*, *louve* ; *ours*, *ourse* ; *paon*, *paone* ; *perroquet*, *perruche* ; *poulain*, *pouliche* ; *serin*, *serine* ; *tigre*, *tigresse* : or the male from the female ; e. g., *cane*, *canard* ; *mule*, *mulet*.

But to the names of most animals the French language assigns the one or the other gender, as *genus epicœnum*, i. e., equally applying to the male and female ; e. g., *un buffalo*, *chameau*, camel ; *éléphant* : une *belette*, weazle ; *girafe*, *hyène*, *panthère* : un *épervier*, sparrow-hawk ; *cygne*, swan ; *geai*, jay ; *hibou*, owl ; *vautour*, vulture : une *autruche*, ostrich ; *hirondelle*, swallow ; *allouette*, lark : un *brochet*, pike ; *saumon*, salmon ; *turbot* : une *carpe*, *anguille*, eel ; *baleine*, whale ; *perche* : un *crocodile*, *caméléon*, *serpent*, *crapaud*, toad : une *grenouille*, frog ; *tortue*, tortoise ; *vipère* : un *papillon*, butterfly ; *hanneton*, May-bug : une *fourmi*, ant ; *araignée*, spider.

The actual sex of such animals is designated in French the same way as in English, viz., by adding the words *mâle*, male, or *femelle*, female ; e. g., *la panthère mâle*, the male panther ; *l'éléphant femelle*, the female elephant ; or, but more rarely, *le mâle de la panthère*, the male of the panther ; *la femelle de l'éléphant*, the female of the elephant.

II. Nouns representing inanimate things, and Abstract Nouns.

The gender of the immense majority of the nouns belonging to this class, is determined by, and may accordingly (in most cases) be known from, the termination of the noun.

The gender of a comparatively small number of them, may be known also from the nature or signification of the object denominated by the noun, or from the class to which that

object happens to belong. Of these latter we will here treat first, premising that, though the gender of most of them will be found to correspond to the respective *male* or *female* termination of the noun, yet there are some among them to which the termination would assign a different gender; and others which, by virtue of their termination, form exceptions from the rule under which they are respectively classed here.

a. Of the masculine gender are—

1. The names of *winds, seasons, months, and days*. Exceptions.—*La bise*, north-east wind; *la brise*, breeze; *la mousson*, monsoon, trade wind; *la tramontane*, north wind; *automne*, autumn, is made of both genders; the masculine is preferable however.

2. The names of *colours and metals*, and also the names of *minerals*, with few exceptions.

3. The names of *trees and shrubs*. Exceptions.—*Aubépine*, hawthorn; *épine*, thorn; *ronce*, briar; *vigne*, vine; *yeuse*, holm-oak.

4. The names of *mountains*. Exceptions.—*Les Alpes, les Andes* or *Cordillères, les Cévennes, les Pyrénées, les Vosges*.

5. The names of *lakes*.

6. The names of *boroughs, villages, hamlets*, on account of *bourg, village, hameau*, which are of the masculine gender, being always understood.

NOTE.—The gender of the names of *states, empires, kingdoms, provinces, towns, islands, rivers*, may in most cases be ascertained from their respective terminations. With regard to the names of *rivers*, however, we may remark that the names of *ancient* and of most *large modern* rivers are of the *masculine* gender; and with respect to the names of *towns and cities*, that some grammarians would make them all of the *feminine* gender,* with the exception of *Londres* and *Paris*, and those which necessarily take the article *le* before them, as *le Havre, le Caire, &c.*; whilst others assign the *masculine* gender to them, with the exception of those which necessarily take the article *la* before them, as *la Rochelle, la Haye, &c.*

7. All *adjectives, infinitives, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions*, when used in a substantive capacity.

NOTE.—Adjectives used substantively as representatives of personal nouns, adopt, of course, always the gender of the person respectively represented by them.

* The word *ville*, town, city, which is of the feminine gender, being assumed to be understood. But when the name of a town is used *figuratively* for its *population*, the masculine gender is always assigned to it; e.g., *tout Rome a assisté à cette glorieuse fête*, all Rome was present at this glorious festival.

8. The *letters of the alphabet*.

9. Those compound words joined by hyphens which do not contain a noun substantive (except *haute-contre*, counter-tenor), and all those formed of a verb and noun (except *garde-robe*, closet, wardrobe; *tire-lire*, money-box), and the names of a few plants, as, *perce-neige*, snow-drop; *perce-pierre* or *passe-pierre*, sea-fennel; *passe-rage*, dittany, and a few more.

NOTE.—All other compounds joined by hyphens follow the gender of the principal noun, except the compounds of *mi*, mid, middle, half, with the names of the months, as *la mi-Septembre*, middle of September; and also *la mi-carême*, mid-lent; *après-midi* (fem.), afternoon; *arrière-main* (masc.), back-stroke; *chèvre-feuille* (masc.), honeysuckle; *haut-de-chausses* (masc.), breeches; *rez-de-chaussée* (masc.), ground-floor; *rouge-gorge* (masc.), robin-redbreast; *tête-à-tête* (masc.).

b. Of the feminine gender are—

The names of holidays and saints' days, on account of the word *fête*, which is of the feminine gender, being understood; e. g., *la St. Jean*, *la St. Michel*, *la Pentecôte*, Whitsuntide. Exceptions.—*Pâques*, Easter, and *Noël*, Christmas; and even these two are not unfrequently found to follow the general rule. *Pâque*, the Jewish passover, and *les pâques*, Easter devotions, are always feminine.

We now come to the last and most important part of this section, viz., that treating of the rules which define the influence of the termination of nouns over their gender, and which apply to the names of animals, as well as to those of inanimate things, and to abstract nouns.

Rule I.

Of the masculine gender, are—

a. All nouns of the class here treated of, ending in *consonants*, with the exception of those in *ion*, *aïson*, and *eur*.

b. All nouns of the class here treated of, ending in *vowels*, with the exception of those in *té* and *tié*, and in *e* mute (except those given sub c).

c. All nouns of the class here treated of, ending in *ge*, *me*, *ice*, *ire*, *ste*; and also those in *le* and *re*, when preceded by any other consonant (those in *lle* and *rre*, and in *le* and *re* preceded by a vowel, are of the feminine gender).

Rule II.

Of the feminine gender, are—

a. All nouns of the class here treated of, terminating in *aïson*, *ion*, and *eur*.

b. All nouns of the class here treated of, terminating in *té* and *tié*, and in *e* mute, except those given in Rule I, sub c.

*Exceptions to Rule I.**

a.

Amours (plural in the sense of *passion*, or *affection of one sex for the other*, and also in the sense of *mistress*; in all other acceptations the plural *amours* follows the rule,—the singular *amour* is invariably of the masculine gender), *boisson*, *brebis*, *chair*, *chanson*, *chaux*, *clef*, *cloison*, *cour*, *croix*, *cuiller*, *cuisson*, *dent*, *dot*, *faim*, *faux*, scythe (but *le faux*, falsehood); *fin*, end, design (but *le fin*, main point, cream of a thing, best part of a thing); *façon* and its compounds, *fois*, time; *foison*, *forêt*, forest (but *le forêt*, gimlet); *garnison*, *gent*, nation, tribe, race; *guérison*, *hart*, *iris*, iris, rainbow (but *l'iris*, masc.,—the iris, a plant; this latter is, however, also by some made of the feminine gender); *leçon*, *main*, *mère*, *moisson*, *mort*, death; *mousson*, *nef*, *noix*, *nuît*, *paix*, *pâmoison*, *part* and its compounds, *perdrix*, *poix*, *prison*, *rançon*, *soif*, *souris*, mouse (but *le souris*, smile); *toison*, *tour*, tower (but *le tour*, turn, trick, circumference, trip, walk, lathe); *toux*, *trahison*, *vis*, *voix*; and also, *Bagdad*, *Cumes*, *Honduras*, *Namur*, *Santa-Cruz*, *Tyr*, *Valladolid*, *Vera-Cruz*.

b.

Eau, *foi*, *faith*; *fourmi*, *glu*, *loi*, *merci*, *paroi*, wall, partition (when applied to a part of the body, this word is made masculine by most grammarians; e. g., *le paroi du nez*, the bridge of the nose); *peau*, *tribu*, *vertu*; and also *Bassora*, *Ceuta*, *Cuba*, *Java*, *Lima*, *Malaga*, *Otahiti*, *Riga*, *Scio*.

c.

1. In *ge*—all in *rge* (except *le cierge*, *le large*); *allège*, tender, lighter; *alonge*, *ange*, chain-shot (but *ange*, *angel*, is of course masculine); *auge*, *axonge*, *cage*, *cominge*, *éponge*, *fange*, *fontange*, *frange*, *grange*, *horloge*, *image*, *loge*, *longe*, *losange*, *louange*, *mésange*, *nage*, *neige*, *orange*, *orge*, barley (but *orge mondé*, or *perlé*, peeled or pearly barley, is always masculine); *page*, page, side of a leaf (but *le page*, page, attendant); *phalange*,

* Obsolete terms, and technical and scientific terms of rare occurrence, are not mentioned in this list of exceptions, as it would be worse than useless for the student to encumber his memory with them.

plage, rage, sauge, surlonge, tige, toge, vendange, vidange, volige, voltige; and also *Cambridge, Carthage, Norvège, Thuringe*.

2. In *me*—*alarme, âme, amertume, anagramme, arme, bergame, birème (trirème, &c.), brème, brume, chiourme, crème, cream* (but *le crème*, or more correctly, *chrème*, chrism, act of anointing, consecrated oil); *cime, coutume, décime, a tenth; dîme, drachme, écume, enclume, énigme, épigramme, escrime, estame, estime, fame, ferme, flamme, forme, frime, gamme, gomme, gourme, grume, jusquiame, lame, larme, légitime*, portion of a child (law term); *lime, maxime, oriflamme, palme, a branch of the palm tree, victory, triumph* (but *un palme*, a palm, or hand's breadth); *paume, plume, pomme, prime, quadragésime (quinquagésime, sexagésime, septuagésime), rame, réclame, catchword* (but *un réclame*, a reclaiming, term of falconry); *reformé, rime, somme, sum, burden* (but *le somme*, nap, slumber); *trame, victime*; and also *Bohème, Parme, Rome, Sodome*.

3. In *ice*—*avarice, blandices* (plural—cajoling, flattery), *cicatrice, délices* (plural—delights; the singular *délice* follows the rule); *épice, hélice, immondices* (plural—filth, dirt); *justice (injustice), lice, malice, matrice, milice, notice, office, buttery, pantry* (but *un office*, an office, part, good turn); *police, prémices* (plural—first-fruits); *varice*; and also *Galice*.

4. In *ire*—all names of plants in *aire* (except *capillaire, maidenhair*), *affaire, aire, amusoire, armoire, atteloire, attrapoire, avaloire, baignoire, balançoire, bassinoire, bouilloire, branloire, buire, chaire, circulaire, circular, circular letter; cire, couloire, décrottoire, doloire, écritoire, écumoire, foire, glaire, glissoire, gloire, grammair, haire, hégire, histoire, ire, judiciaire, judgment, discernment; lardoire, mâchoire, mangeoire, mémoire, memory* (but *un mémoire*, a memoir, memorandum); *moire, nageoire, noire, passoire, paire, poire, polissaire, racloire, strickle* (but *le racloir*, scraper, rake); *satire, statuaire, statuary, the art of the sculptor; tire, draught, pull* (used only in certain locutions; e. g., *tout d'une tire*, all at once); *victoire*; and also *Épire*.

5. In *ste*—*améthyste, baliste, batiste, caste, conteste, liste, peste, piste, poste, mail, post-office* (but *le poste*, post, station, place, office, employment); *riposte, sieste, toste, rowing bench in a boat, rowing match* (but *le toste*, toast, health); *veste*.

6. In *le*—*accouple, aigle, eagle* (in the sense of standard, colours, banner; as; e. g., *l'aigle impériale*, the imperial eagle; *l'aigle romaine*, the Roman eagle; in every other acceptation *aigle* follows the rule); *barnacle, besicles* (plural—spectacles, temple-glasses); *bible, boucle, chasuble, a kind of cope; cible,*

débâcle, *épingle*, *escarboucle*, *étable*, *fable*, *manicles* (plural—manacles), *maroufle*, a kind of paste (but *le maroufle*, scoundrel); *moufle*, *nefle*, *pantoufle*, *perle*, *pétoncle*, *rafle*, *règle*, *sangle*, *table*, *tringle*; and also *Adrianople*.

7. In *re*—*algèbre*, *ancree*, *câpre*, caper, fruit-bud of the *Capparis spinosa*, Linn. (but *le câpre*, privateer); *chambre*, *chartre*, *chèvre*, *chiragre*, gout in the hands (but *le chiragre*, person afflicted with gout in the hands); *coriandre*, *couleuvre*, *dartre*, *dextre*, *encre*, *épître*, *escadre*, *fenêtre*, *fibre*, *fièvre*, *filandres* (plural—sea-weeds); *foudre*, thunderbolt (but *un foudre*, a large tun; *foudre*, thunderbolt, is also made masculine in the elevated style, and in poetry; e.g., *être frappé du foudre*; *expirer sous les foudres vengeurs*; when used in a figurative sense *foudre* is always made masculine; e.g., *un foudre d'éloquence*, a great orator; *un foudre de guerre*, a great general, a great warrior; *les foudres lancés par les papes*); *gaufre*, *givre*, serpent (in heraldry—but *le givre*, hoar-frost); *guêtre*, *huître*, *hydre*, *lèpre*, *lettre*, *lèvre*, *livre*, pound, weight of 12 or 16 ounces; also a coin synonymous with *franc*; *une livre sterling*, one pound sterling (but *le livre*, book); *loutre*, otter (but *un loutre*, a hat made of otter's fur); *malencontre*, *manœuvre*, evolution, rigging (but *un manœuvre*, a labourer, bricklayer's labourer); *martre*, *mitre*, *montre*, *nacre*, *ocre*, *œuvre*, work, deed, action (but *œuvre*, as applied to the works of an engraver, musician, &c., is of the masculine gender; *le grand-œuvre*, the philosopher's stone; *des hors d'œuvre*, ragouts, side dishes, is also of the masculine gender); *offre*, *ombre*, shade, shadow, ghost (but *hombre*, ombre, game at cards, follows the rule); *outré*, *patenôtre*, chaplet; *piastre*, *polacre*, a kind of vessel used in the Levant; *poudre*, *pourpre*, purple dye, a small shell fish (but *le pourpre*, purple, the purples—kind of fever); *poutre*, *rencontre*, *ténèbres* (plural—darkness, the infernal regions); *tourtre*, *vêpres*, *vertèbre*, *vitre*; and also *Calabre*, *Cypre*, *Flandre*, *Gueldre*.

Exceptions to Rule II.

a.

1. In *ion*—*Ardé lion*, *bastion*, *billion* (million, &c.), *brimborion*, *camion*, *croupion*, *gabion*, *galion*, *lampion*, *lion*, *morion*, *morpion*, *pion*, *scion*, *scorpion*, *septentrion*, *stellion*, *talion*, *taudion*.

2. In *eur*—*bonheur*, *choufleur* (properly—*chou-fleur*, and accordingly of the masculine gender; *chou*, the principal noun of the compound, being masculine); *chœur*, *cœur*, *composteur*, *dénominateur*, *déshonneur*, *diviseur*, *équateur*, *honneur*, *labeur*,

lecteur, malheur, numérateur, pleurs (plural—tears); *secteur, ventilateur*; and also *Elsineur*.

b.

1. In *té*—*abricoté, aparté, arrêté, bénédicité, comité, comté, côté, été, pâté, précipité, traité, velouté*.

2. In *e* mute.—All chemical salts in *ate* and *ite*; all architectural terms in *glyphe* and *style*; all philosophical instruments in *scope*; all geometrical figures in *gone*:—*aborigènes* (plural—aborigines), *acrostiche, acte, adepte, adultère, adverbe, alvéole, amulette, andante, âne, animalcule, antidote, antimoine, antipodes* (plural—antipodes), *apogée (périgée), apologue, arcane, aromate, ascarides* (plural—ascarides), *asphalte, asphodèle, astérisque, attique, augure, aune*, alder (but *une aune*, an ell); *autographe, automate, axe, baigne, baptistère, barbe*, Barbary horse (but *la barbe*, beard); *becfigue*, béquarre, berce*, robin red-breast (but *la berce*, cow-parsnip); *beurre, bissexe, bronze, caducée, caïque, calorifère, calorique, calque, camée, cantique, capitole, capricorne, capuce, caractère, carbone, carrosse, cartouche, cartouche*, ornament in sculpture (but *la cartouche*, cartridge); *casque, catafalque, catalogue, catarrhe, cautère, cénotaphe, centaure, cerne, chêne, chyle, cigarre, cimeterre, cimetière, cirque, cloaque*, common sewer (but *cloaque* applied to the works of the ancients, follows the rule); *cloporte, clystère, coche*, caravan, large coach, passage-boat (but *la coche*, old sow, notch); *code, codicille, colisée, colloque, collyre, colosse, commerce, compte* and its compounds, *concile, conciliabule, conclave, cône, confesse, conte, contrôle, coryphée, cothurne, conventicule, coude, crabe, crâne, cratère, crépe, crape* (but *une crépe*, a pancake); *crépuscule, crocodile, cube, culte, cygne, décalogue, dédale, démerite, dialecte, dialogue, dièse, diocèse, disque, dissyllabe*, and all other compounds of *syllabe* (*syllabe* itself, however, follows the rule), *distiche, dithyrambe, dividende, divorce, dogue, domaine, domicile, doute, ébène, électrophore, élève, ellébore, elysée, embarcadère, émétique, empire, émule, épilogue, épisode, équinoxe, érysipèle, escompte, espace, évangile, exergue, exode, exorde, faite, feurre, filigrane, fleuve, fluide, foie, liver*; *follicule*, gall bladder (but *la follicule*, the seed-vessel in plants); *fratricide, homicide, &c., frêne, génie, gîte, glaive, globe, globule, golfe, grade, granite, greffe*, rolls, register (but *une greffe*, a graft); *groupe, gruyère, gymnase, gypse, hâle, héliotrope*, sunflower (but *une héliotrope*, an oriental jasper); *hémisphère, hémistiche, hiéroglyphe, horoscope, hydrogène*

* More commonly *bec-fignes* (becafico).

(*oxygène*, &c.), *hyménée*, *hymne*, hymn, patriotic or martial song (but *une hymne*, a religious hymn); *iambe*, *ictère*, *Inde*, river Indus (but *Inde*, India, is of the feminine gender); *inde*, indigo; *insect*, *interligne*, *intermède*, *interrègne*, *intervalle*, *jaspe*, *jeûne*, *kiosque*, *labyrinthe*, *laque*, china varnish, lacquer (but *la laque*, gum lac); *lexique*, *libelle*, *lierre*, *lobe*, *logogriphe*, *luxe*, *lycée*, *madrépore*, *magistère*, *malaise*, *manche*, handle (but *la manche*, sleeve); *mânes* (plural—ghost), *manque*, *martyre*, martyrdom; *mausolée*, *médianoche*, *menstrue*, *mercure*, *mérite*, *mésaise*, *mésentère*, *météore*, *mille*, a mile; *ministère*, *mode*, mood in grammar—modulation in music (but *la mode*, fashion); *modèle*, *môle*, mole, pier, dam (but *une môle*, a moon-calf, a false conception); *monastère*, *monde*, *monologue*, *monopole*, *monticule*, *morne*, *moule*, mould, model (but *la moule*, mussel, shell-fish); *multiplicande*, *murmure*, *musée*, *myrte*, *mystère*, *mythe*, *narcisse*, *négoce*, *obélisque*, *opuscule*, *orbe*, *organe*, *orgue*, organ (but the plural *orgues* follows the rule); *pacte*, *pagne*, pungar or punger, a kind of craw-fish (but *la pagne*, the piece of cotton worn by negroes round the loins); *panache*, plume of feathers (but *une panache*, a pea-hen); *panégyrique*, *parachute*, *paradoxe*, *parafe*, *paragraphe*, *parallèle*, comparison, parallel (but *une parallèle*, a parallel line); *para-pluie*, *parjure*, *parterre*, *participe*, *pastenade*, *pastiche*, *patrimoine*, *pavie*, *pécule*, *pédicule*, *peigne*, *pendule*, pendulum (but *la pendule*, clock); *pêne*, *pentateuque*, *périnée*, *période*, pitch, summit (but *la période*, period, interval, epoch); *perpendicule*, *pétale*, *phénomène*, *phare*, *phosphore*, *pique*, spade at cards (but *une pique*, a grudge); *pivoine*, gnat-snapper (but *la pivoine*, peony); *plane*, plane tree (but *une plane*, a plane—tool); *planisphère*, *platane*, *platine*, platinum (but *la platine*, round copper plate, scutcheon of a lock, apron of a cannon, plate of a watch); *poêle*, stove, canopy, pall (but *une poêle*, a frying-pan); *pôle*, *polype*, *ponche*, *ponte*, a term used at cards (but *la ponte*, laying of eggs); *porche*, *pore*, *porphyre*, *portique*, *pouce*, *préambule*, *précepte*, *prêche*, *prélude*, *prépuce*, *presbytère*, *parsonage*; *prétexte*, excuse, pretext (but *la prétexte*, pretexta, a robe worn by the ancient Roman patricians); *principe*, *projectile*, *prologue*, *prône*, *protocole*, *proverbe*, *pygmée*, *quadrille*, the game of quadrille (but *une quadrille*, a troop of horse for a carousal, quadrille); *quadrupède*, *quaterne*, *quelque chose*, a thing, something; e. g., *il a fait quelque chose qui mérite d'être blâmé*, he has done a thing deserving of reprobation, he has committed a blameable action; but *quelque chose*, used in the sense of *whatsoever*, is feminine; e. g., *quelque chose qu'il ait dite, on ne lui a pas répondu*, whatsoever he did say, no one replied to him—all he

could say, no one answered him; *quinconce*, *rôle*, *régale*, an organ pipe (but *la régale*, regal, royal right, prerogative); *règne*, *relâche*, rest, relaxation (but *une relâche*, harbour, road, bay); *remède*, *renne*, *reproche*, *reptile*, *rève*, *réverbère*, *risque*, *rite* (usually spelt *rit*), *rôle*, *sacerdoce*, *saule*, *scandale*, *scarabée*, *scrupule*, *sexe*, *signe*, *silence*, *site*, *socque*, *solde*, balance of an account (but *la solde*, pay); *soliloque*, *spadille*, *sphéroïde*, *spondée*, *squelette*, *squirrel*, *stade*, *stère*, *stigmates* (plural—prints, marks), *store*, *style*, *subside*, *sycamore*, *sycophante*, *symbole*, *synode*, *tartare*, *tartarus*, hell; *télégraphe*, *ternes* (plural—two treys), *testicule*, *texte*, *tintamarre*, *tonnerre*, *topique*, *torse*, trunk of a figure, term of sculpture (but *une torse*, a twisted piece of wood); *tournebride*, a kind of inn; *tournebroche*, a roasting-jack (*tournebride*, *tournebroche*, compounds of a verb and noun, and therefore masculine); *triomphe*, triumph (but *une triomphe*, a trump card); *trône*, *trope*, *trophée*, *tropique*, *tube*, *tubercule*, *tumulte*, *type*, *ukase*, *ulcère*, *ustensile*, *vase*, a vase, vessel (but *la vase*, slime, mud); *vaudeville*, *véhicule*, *verbe*, *vermicelle*, *verre*, *vestibule*, *viatique*, *violoncelle*, *viscère*, *vitupère*, *voile*, veil, crape, cover, pretence (but *une voile*, a sail, ship); *vote*, *zèle*, *zodiaque*; and also *Bengale*, *Bigorre*, *Bosphore*, *Byzance*, *Coblence*, *Copenhague*, *Cornouaille*, *Crète*, *Danube*, *Domingue* (St.), *Dresde*, *Dunkerque*, *Elbe*, *Euphrate*, *Lampsaque*, *Maine*, *Mexique*, *Mozambique*, *Peloponnèse*, *Perche*, *Rouergue*, *Ternate*.

SECT. II. *Formation of the Plural of Substantives.*

The plural number of most substantives is formed by adding *s* to the singular; e. g., *le roi*, *les rois*; *un homme*, *des hommes*; *le voleur*, *les voleurs*.

Exceptions.

1. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, remain the same in the plural; e. g., *le fils*, *les fils*; *la croix*, *les croix*; *le nez*, *les nez*.
2. Nouns ending in *au* and *eu*, add *x* in the plural; e. g., *un étai*, *des étaux*; *un bateau*, *des bateaux*; *le jeu*, *les jeux*.

REMARK.—*Landau* forms its plural in *s*.

3. *Bijou*, *caillou*, *chou*, *genou*, *joujou*, *hibou*, *pou*, make their plural in *x* (*bijoux*, *cailloux*, &c.) The other nouns in *ou* follow the general rule, and add *s* in the plural; e. g., *un trou*, *des trous*; *le filou*, *les filous*.

4. Nouns in *al* change that final to *aux* in the plural; e.g., *un hôpital, des hôpitaux*.

REMARK.—The following substantives in *al* follow the general rule and add *s* in the plural: (1) *aval*, endorsement of a bill of exchange, *bal, vocal,* cal, cantal* (a sort of cheese), *carnaval, local,* nopal* (a sort of Indian fig), *pal, régal (avals, bals, &c.)*,—(2) *chacal, serval*, and other names of animals in *al*, with the exception of *cheval*, which makes *chevaux* in the plural.

5. *Bail, émail, corail, soupirail, travail,† vantail*, change the final *ail* to *aux* in the plural (*baux, émaux, &c.*). *Ail*, garlic, makes *ails* or *aulx* in the plural; *bétail*, cattle, has no plural (*bestiaux*, cattle, is a distinct plural noun).

6. *Ciel, œil, aïeul*, have a double plural.

Ciel { makes *ciels* in the sense of *temperature, climate*, and in *ciels-de-lit, ciels-de-carrière, ciels-de-tableaux*.
makes *cieux* in all other cases; e.g., *les cieux annoncent la gloire de Dieu*, the heavens proclaim the glory of God.

Œil { makes *œils* in *œils-de-bœuf*, small oval windows, small lutherns or dormer-windows; and in certain compound nouns beginning with *œil*, as; *des œils-de-chat*, cat's-eyes (a sort of precious stone), &c.
makes *yeux* in all other cases; e.g., *des yeux bleus, des yeux espiègles; les yeux du pain, les yeux du bouillon, les yeux du fromage; tailler à deux yeux, à trois yeux* (term of gardening).

Aïeul { makes *aïeuls* when intended to designate the paternal and maternal grandfather of an individual; e.g., *il vient de perdre ses deux aïeuls*, he has just lost his two grandfathers.
makes *aïeux* in the sense of *ancestors, forefathers*; e.g., *nos aïeux étaient plus forts que nous*, our forefathers were stronger than we are; *cette petite maison est tout ce qui lui reste du beau domaine de ses aïeux*, this little house is all that remains to him of the fine estate of his ancestors.

7. Nouns in *ant* and *ent*, of more than one syllable, may suppress the *t* in the plural; the more correct way, however, is to retain it, and to write *des enfants, des diamants, des appartements, &c.*, instead of *des enfans, diamans, appartemens, &c.* In the case of *monosyllables* the suppression of the *t* in the plural is absolutely inadmissible (*gens*, folks, people, servants, which might seem an exception from this rule, is to be considered in the light of an independent plural noun, and not as the plural of *gent*, nation, tribe).

* According to the Dictionary of the French Academy.

† *Travail* has a double plural, *travaux* and *travails*; the latter, however, is used only to designate administrative reports, and also certain machines for the shoeing of vicious horses.

8. Words essentially indeclinable do not receive the mark of the plural when accidentally employed as substantives; e. g., *les si et les mais; les car; les pourquoi; les on dit, &c.*

Proper Names of Persons.

Proper names of persons remain the same in the plural as in the singular; e. g., *les deux Scott ont atteint aux plus hauts rangs de la magistrature*, the two Scotts have reached the highest ranks on the bench; *Rouen a vu naître les deux Corneille*, Rouen is the birthplace of the two Corneilles.

Exceptions.—We write generally in the plural, *les Bourbons, les Condés, les Guises, les Stuarts*, probably because the proper name is used here as a title, or surname, intended to designate a certain class or family, rather than any particular individual member of that class or family, the names *Bourbons, Condés, Guises, Stuarts* may be looked upon in some sort as synonymous with, and performing the function of, the common nouns *kings, princes*, applied to a certain class of individuals.

When proper names are used to designate individuals similar to those denominated by them, they may properly be looked upon as common appellatives, and receive accordingly the usual mark in the plural; e. g., *les Byrons et les Shelleys sont bien plus rares que les Southey et les Wordsworths*. Poets like Byron and Shelley are much more rarely met with than your Southey and Wordsworths.

REMARK.—Sometimes we find proper names preceded by the article *les*, although intended to designate only one individual; e. g., *les Racine et les Corneille ont illustré la scène française*, Racine and Corneille have adorned the French stage. In cases of this kind the article is not intended to convey an idea of plurality to the mind, but simply to impart greater force and elegance to the expression.

Formation of the Plural of Compound Substantives joined by a Hyphen.

The general principle here is, that the mark of the plural can be affixed only to words to which an idea of plurality may attach; accordingly—

1. In compounds formed of a substantive and an adjective, both the former and the latter receive the mark of the plural; e. g., *une basse-taille, des basses-tailles; un plain-chant, des plains-chants*.

Exceptions.—*Des rouge-gorge* (*rouge-gorge*, robin red-breast,

is an elliptical form for *oiseau à rouge gorge*, bird with a red-breast, *des rouge-gorge*, accordingly, means simply *des oiseaux à rouge-gorge*, birds with a red-breast; and therefore neither the substantive *gorge*, nor the adjective *rouge*, can receive the mark of the plural); *des blanc-seings*, blank bonds, signatures in blank; *des terre-pleins*, platforms of earth, (in the former of these two instances no idea of plurality can attach to *blanc*, in the latter none to *terre*, the sense, accordingly, forbids the mark of the plural being attached to either of these words); *des cheval-légers*, light-horse, light cavalry (no other reason, save a somewhat fantastical custom, can be assigned for the omission of the *x* from the substantive *chevaux* in this compound); *des grand'mères*, *des grand'messes* (in these two latter instances the adjective remains invariable in obedience to the exigencies of pronunciation).

REMARK.—When there enters in the composition of a compound noun a word which is not used in an independent sense by itself, as is the case, for instance, in *loup-garou*, wehr-wolf, that word is looked upon in the light of an adjective, and receives accordingly the mark of the plural, *des lous-garous*. Except the initial particles *vice*, *semi*, *quasi*, *ex*, which remain always invariable; e.g., *les vice-présidents*, *des semi-tons*, *des quasi-délits*, *des ex-rois*.

2. In compounds formed of two substantives connected by a hyphen, without the intervention of a preposition, one of the two substantives is looked upon in the light of an adjective qualifying the other noun, and shares accordingly the mark of the plural with the other; e.g., *un chef-lieu*, principal town of a district or province, *des chefs-lieux*; *un chien-loup*, wolf-dog, *des chiens-loups*; *un chou-fleur*, cauliflower, *des choux-fleurs*.

Exceptions.—*Un bec-figes*, becafico (bird picking figs with its bill), *des bec-figes*; *un appui-main*, maulstick (support for the hand), *des appuis-main* (supports for the hand); *un Hôtel-Dieu*, hospital (*hôtel de Dieu*, house or inn of God), *des Hôtels-Dieu*, houses or inns of God; *un brèche-dents* (person having a gap in the row of his teeth), *des brèche-dents* (persons having a gap in their teeth); *un bain-marie*, balneum Mariæ* (bath of the prophetess Mary, who is said to have invented it), *des bains-marie*. In these cases no idea of plurality attaches to the words *bec*, *main*, *Dieu*, *brèche*, *marie*, and accordingly they cannot receive the mark of the plural.

3. In compounds formed of two substantives connected by means of a preposition, the first substantive takes the mark of

* Some etymologists take *bain-marie* to be a corruption of *balneum maris*, which is probably the more correct opinion of the two.

the plural; e.g., *un chef d'œuvre*, masterpiece, *des chefs d'œuvre*; *un arc-en-ciel*, rainbow, *des arcs-en-ciel*.

Exceptions.—*des coq-à-l'âne* (incoherent tales in which the narrator jumps from one subject to another not in the least connected with it), *des pied-à-terre*, *des tête-à-tête*.

4. In compounds formed of a substantive and a verb (or preposition, or adverb), the substantive alone takes the mark of the plural (provided always there be an idea of plurality conveyed by the word). Thus, for instance, we write with *s* in the plural,—*des contre-coups*, counter-buffs; *des avant-coureurs*, forerunners; *des arrière-saisons*, after-seasons: but without *s*,—*des serre-tête*, night-caps (bonnet covering or enclosing the head); *des réveille-matin*, alarums (clocks which serve to awaken people in the morning); *des contre-poison*, antidotes; because no idea of plurality attaches here to the words *tête*, *matin*, and *poison*: finally, we affix the *s* to the substantive both in the singular and plural in compounds like the following:—*un essuie-mains*, a towel (literally, wipe-hands), *des essuie-mains*; *un porte-mouchettes*, snuffers-tray, *des porte-mouchettes*; *un cure-dents*, a tooth-pick (literally, pick-teeth), *des cure-dents*.

5. In compounds formed of words essentially indeclinable, such as *verbs*, *prepositions*, *adverbs*, none of the components can receive the mark of the plural; e.g., *des pour-boire*, pot-money; *des passe-partout*, masterkeys; *des passe-passe*, juggling-tricks.

Plural of words borrowed from other languages.

Foreign words on which frequent use has bestowed to some extent the right of citizenship in the French language, follow the general rule on the formation of the plural. Write accordingly, *des accessits*, *des agendas*, *des albums*, *des alibis*, *des alinéas*, *des altos*, *des apartés*, *des bravos*, *des concettis*, *des débets*, *des déficits*, *des duos*, *des duplicatas*, *des erratas*, *des examens*, *des factotums*, *des factums*, *des folios*, *des impromptus*, *des ladys*, *des lazzis*, *des macaronis*, *des numéros*, *des opéras*, *des oratorios*, *des panoramas*, *des pensums*, *des pianos*, *des placets*, *des quatuors*, *des quiproquos*, *des quolibets*, *des récépissés*, *des reliquats*, *des satisfécits*, *des solos*, *des spécimens*, *des tilburys*, *des trios*, *des zéros*. With regard to the words in Roman type, however, we must observe that the use of the *s* in the plural is not yet generally adopted.

The following foreign words reject the mark of the French plural:—

a. *Alleluia*, *amen*, *ave*, *credo*, *pater*, *maximum*.

b. Foreign nouns formed of two or several words, connected by means of a hyphen: des *post-scriptum*, des *in-folio*, des *in-octavo*, des *in-quarto*, des *mezzo-terme*, des *ecce-homo*, des *ex-voto*, des *fac-simile*, des *auto-da-fé*, des *forté-piano*.

Exception.—*Sénatus-consulte*, des *sénatus-consultes*.

We write also des *Te Deum*.

c. Nouns having a particular termination for the plural in the language from which they are respectively borrowed: *quintetto*, *quintetti*; *carbonaro*, *carbonari*; *dilettante*, *dilettanti*; *lazarone*, *lazaroni*.

SECT. III. *Complement of the Substantive.*

A word which serves to define and complete the idea conveyed to the mind by another word, is called the *complement* of the latter. Thus, in *le palais du roi*, the palace of the king (the king's palace), *du roi* is the complement of *palais*; in *le désir de plaire*, the desire to please, *de plaire* is the complement of *désir*; in *un homme enclin au vice*, a man inclined to vice, *au vice* is the complement of *enclin*; *chacun de vous recevra trois francs par jour*, each of you will receive three francs a day, *de vous* is the complement of *chacun*; *trois francs*, and *par jour* are complements of *recevra* (*sera recevant*).

The *complement* or *regimen* of a noun substantive is joined to that noun by means of the preposition *de*. The English 's, representing the possessive case, must therefore also be rendered in French by that preposition; e. g., the king's palace, *le palais du roi* (*de le roi*—see page 24), the palace of the king; my brother's house, *la maison de mon frère*, the house of my brother.

NOTE.—In cases where the words dwelling, house, &c., are understood after the 's, the English prepositions *at* and *to* are rendered in French by *chez*, *from* by *de chez*, the 's being left untranslated; e. g., I have been at my father's, i. e., at my father's house, *j'ai été chez mon père*; he is going to your brother's, i. e., your brother's residence, *il va chez votre frère*; I come from your uncle's, i. e., from your uncle's residence or place, *je viens de chez votre oncle*, &c. The English expression *at home* is generally rendered in French by *chez*, followed by a personal pronoun corresponding to the person referred to; e. g., he was at home, *il était chez lui*; I shall be at home to-morrow, *je serai chez moi demain*. *At home* may, however, be expressed in French also by *à la maison*, *au logis*.

This seems the proper place also, to give a few general hints on the rendering of certain English compounds into French. Compounds formed of two nouns, or of a noun and a participle present, are rendered in French by the interposition of either

the preposition *de* or *à* between the two components, the infinitive being moreover substituted for the participle present. The preposition *de* is used in such cases, if the one of the components designates the *material*, *species*, *quality*, or *place of origin* of the other; *à*, if it denotes its *use* or *purpose*, or conveys the idea of *possession*; e. g., silk-stockings, *des bas de soie*; Burgundy-wine, *du vin de Bourgogne*; a marble table, *une table de marbre*; olive oil, *de l'huile d'olive*; a milk-jug, *un pot au lait*; a wine-glass, *un verre à vin*; lamp-oil, *de l'huile à brûler*; a paper-mill, *un moulin à papier*; a powder-box, *une boîte à poudre*; the fish-market, *le marché aux poissons*; a black-eyed girl, *une fille aux yeux noirs*. The preposition *à* is used also if one of the components denotes the *physical agent* by which the other is moved: *un moulin à vent*, a wind-mill; *un bateau à vapeur*, a steam-boat; and in certain compounds in the nomenclature of eatables and drinkables, if one of the components denotes the material, or one of the principal ingredients, of or with which the article denominated by the compound is made; e. g., cream-cheese, *fromage à la crème*; cabbage-soup, *soupe aux choux*; milk-soup, *potage au lait*; brandy-punch, *ponche à l'eau de vie*, &c.

Nouns of Multitude.

Nouns which, though standing in the singular, present to the mind the idea of several persons or things forming a collection, are called *collective nouns*, or nouns of *multitude*: nouns of this class are, for instance, *armée*, *peuple*, *troupe*, *quantité*, *assemblée*.

Collective nouns are called *general* when they represent an *entire*, *partitive* when they represent only a *partial*, collection of persons or things; e. g., *general* collectives—*la multitude des étoiles*, the multitude of the stars; *l'armée des Français*, the army of the French: *partitive* collectives—*une multitude d'étoiles*, a multitude of stars; *nous avons vu une foule de pauvres*, we have seen a number of poor people, &c. As a general rule, a collective preceded by *un* or *une* is partitive.

CHAPTER II.

THE ADJECTIVE.

THE adjectives are divided into *qualificative* and *determinative* adjectives.

A.—*Qualificative Adjectives.*

The qualificative adjective is grammatically dependent on the substantive (or pronoun) which it qualifies; *i. e.*, it agrees with it in *gender* and *number*; e. g., *un beau jardin, une belle maison; de beaux arbres, de belles fleurs; un homme prudent, une femme prudente; des hommes prudents, des femmes prudentes; Madame, vous êtes bien bonne; sa fille est muette; il est devenu gros et gras; l'affaire me paraît assez belle; nous ne sommes pas ingrats.*

*Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives.**General Rule.*

Add a mute *e* to the masculine; e. g., *prudent, prudente; vrai, vraie; sensé, sensée; brun, brune; diffus, diffuse, &c.* The verbal adjectives in *ant*, and the *participles past** used in an adjectival capacity, follow the same rule; e. g., *charmant, charmante; aimé, aimée, &c.*

Exceptions.

1. Adjectives terminating in *e* mute serve for both genders; e. g., *un aimable garçon, une aimable fille; un ami fidèle, une amie fidèle, &c.*

2. Adjectives in *er* place an accent grave over the *e*, and add *e* mute; e. g., *amer, amère; entier, entière.*

3. Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ien, et, on*, and *s*, double the final consonant, and add *e* mute; e. g., *cruel, cruelle; pareil,*

* See chapter on the Participle.

pareille; *chrétien*, *chrétienne*; *net*, *nette*; *bon*, *bonne*; *gras*, *grasse*.

NOTE.—*Complet* makes in the feminine *complète*; *concret*, *concrète*; *discret*, *discrète*; *secret*, *secrète*; *inquiet*, *inquiète*; *replet*, *replète*; instead of *complete*, *concrete*, *discrete*, *secrete*, *inquiette*, *replete*. *Mauvais*, *niais*, *ras*, add *e* mute in the feminine; *tiers* makes *tierce*; *exprès* and *profès* make *expresse*, *professe*.

4. *Gentil*, *nul*, *paysan*, *bellot*, *sot*, *vieillot*, make in the feminine *gentille*, *nulle*, *paysanne*, *bellotte*, *sotte*, *vieillotte*.

5. Adjectives ending in *f* and *x*, make their feminine respectively in *ve* and *se*; e. g., *actif*, *active*; *vertueux*, *vertueuse*; *jaloux*, *jalouse*.

NOTE.—*Doux* makes in the feminine *douce*; *faux* and *roux* make *fausse*, *rousse*; *préfix* makes *préfixe*, and *vieux*, *vieille* (the latter from the second form of the masculine, *vieil*).

6. *Aigu*, *ambigu*, *bégu*, *contigu*, *exigu*, add *e* mute marked with a diæresis: *aiguë*, *ambiguë*, &c.

7. *Jumeau*, *beau*, *nouveau*, *fou*, *mou*, make in the feminine *jumelle*, *belle*, *nouvelle*, *folle*, *molle*. The latter four have also a second form for the masculine; *bel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, which is used before a vowel or mute *h*: e. g., *un bel enfant*, *le nouvel habit*, *un fol amour*, *de mol édredon*.

8. *Blanc*, *franc*, *sec*, *frais*, make in the feminine *blanche*, *franche*, *sèche*, *fraîche*: *ammoniac*, *public*, *turc*, *caduc*, change the final *c* to *que* in the feminine; *ammoniaque*, *publique*, *turque*, *caduque*: *grec* makes *grecque*; *long*, *oblong* make *longue*, *oblongue*; *bénin*, *malin* make *bénigne*, *maligne*; *coi* (quiet, still), *favori* make *coite*, *favorite*; *devin* makes *devineresse*.

9. The so-called *adjectives* in *eur* and *teur* have already been treated of in the chapter on the Substantive, to which the student is referred (vide p. 32).

The *real* adjectives in *eur* follow the general rule: *majeur*, *majeure*; *mineur*, *mineure*; *meilleur*, *meilleure*; *extérieur*, *extérieure*; *citérieur*, *citérieure*, &c.

10. *Témoin* and *grognon* serve for both genders: *aquilin*, *châtain*, *dispos*, *fat*, are not used in the feminine.

Formation of the Plural of Adjectives.

The adjectives form their plural by adding *s* to the singular, both of the masculine and feminine; with respect to the latter gender the rule is universal, all the exceptions given here referring exclusively to the masculine form.

Exceptions.

1. Adjectives ending in *s* and *x* remain unchanged in the plural masculine; e. g., *un gros garçon, de gros garçons; un nuage épais, des nuages épais; un objet hideux, des objets hideux.*

2. Adjectives ending in *au* add *x* in the plural masculine; e. g., *de beaux jardins, des enfants jumeaux.*

3. Most adjectives ending in *al* form their plural masculine by changing *al* to *aux*; e. g., *égal, égaux; brutal, brutaux; moral, moraux; partial, partiaux; loyal, loyaux; déloyal, déloyaux, &c.*

A few, however, form their plural masculine by adding *s* to the singular, in obedience to the general rule; these are principally the following: *amical, bancal, fatal, filial, final, fiscal, glacial, initial, matinal, nasal, naval, pascal, pénal, théâtral*, and a few more, which are very rarely used in the plural masculine.

Custom sanctions equally the formation of the plural in *als* and in *aux*, of the following adjectives in *al*: *austral, colossal, doctoral, ducal, frugal, and natal.*

The following adjectives in *al* are not used in the plural masculine, as they only accompany feminine substantives: *bénéficial, canonial, diagonal, diamétral, expérimental, médicinal, mental, patronal, virginal, vocal, zodiacal*, and a few more.

4. The adjectives in *ant* and *ent* may reject the *t* in the plural; the more correct way, however, is to retain the *t*, and to write, for instance, *des livres charmants* (instead of *charmans*), *des hommes prudents* (instead of *prudens*), &c. The adjective *lent* (slow), as a monosyllable, must, of course, always retain the *t*.

5. The plural masculine of *tout* is *tous*.

Comparison of Adjectives (Participles and Adverbs).

The *comparative of equality* is formed in French by putting one of the adverbs *aussi* (as, so), *autant** (as much, so much), before the adjective, the *as* of the second link of the comparison being rendered by *que*; e. g., *mon frère est aussi grand que le vôtre*, my brother is as tall as yours; *le fils n'était pas aussi heureux que le père*, the son was not so happy as the father; *il est autant estimé que chéri*, he is as much esteemed as beloved. In negative sentences, *si* and *tant* may be used instead of *aussi*

* *Aussi* is used with adjectives, *autant* with past-participles; *autant* may stand also after the participle.

and *autant* ; e. g., *il n'est pas si riche que vous*, he is not so rich as you ; *rien ne m'a tant fâché que cette nouvelle*, nothing has vexed me so much as this news.

The *comparative of inferiority* is formed by putting the adverb *moins* (less), before the adjective (the *than* of the second link of the comparison being rendered by *que*) ; e. g., *Barnave était moins éloquent que Mirabeau*, Barnave was less eloquent than Mirabeau.

The *comparative of superiority* is formed by putting the adverb *plus* (more) before the adjective, the *than* of the second link of the comparison being equally rendered by *que* ; e. g., *Jean est plus riche que Pierre*, John is richer than Peter.

NOTES.—*Plus* and *moins*, used as adverbs of quantity, require *de* after them instead of *que* : *cette affaire lui a coûté plus de trois mille livres* ; *il est plus d' à demi mort* ; *du vin plus d' à moitié bu* ; *il ne donne jamais moins de deux livres*, &c.

The English preposition *by*, used after a comparative, is rendered in French by *de* ; e. g., he is taller than his brother by two inches, *il est plus grand que son frère de deux pouces* ; London is larger than Paris by far, *Londres est plus grand que Paris de beaucoup*.

In sentences containing two comparatives, the one consequent on and corresponding with the other, the English language makes use of the definite article before both comparatives, whereas the French language puts the single comparative adverb without the article ; thus, expressions like *the more—the more, the more—the less, the richer—the poorer*, &c. are rendered into French respectively by *plus—plus, plus—moins, plus—riche, plus—pauvre*, &c. ; e. g., the longer the day the shorter the night, *plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte* ; the more he earns, the less he spends, *plus il gagne, moins il dépense*, &c.

The English expressions *so much the more, so much the less*, are rendered in French by *d'autant plus, d'autant moins* ; e. g., his conduct in this matter is so much the more praiseworthy, as he has acted to the detriment of his own interests, *sa conduite dans cette affaire est d'autant plus louable qu'il en a agi au détriment de ses propres intérêts*.

We have three adjectives in French (and also three adverbs) which express in themselves a comparative of superiority, viz., the adjectives *meilleur*, better (comparative of *bon*, good), *pire*, worse (comparative of *mauvais*, bad), and *moindre*, less, lesser, smaller (comparative of *petit*, little) ; however, of the two latter adjectives, the regular comparatives, *plus mauvais, plus petit*,* are equally used ; and the adverbs *mieux*, better (comparative of *bien*, well), *moins*, less (comparative of *peu*, little), and *pis*, worse (comparative of *mal*, badly) ; however, of the latter adverb the regular form of the comparative *plus mal* is also used.

We have two sorts of *superlatives*, viz., the *absolute* and the *relative*.

The *superlative absolute* of superiority or inferiority, expresses the highest or lowest degree in a general sense, and without

* *Moindre* is used more as a term of *value* ; *plus petit*, as a term of *measure*.

implying an idea of comparison with other persons or things; it is formed by putting the adverbial locutions *le plus*, *le mieux*, *le moins*, before the adjective; e. g., *vous ne pleurez pas, lors même qu'elle est le plus affligée*, your sister sheds no tears, even when she is most afflicted, &c.

The *superlative relative* of superiority or inferiority is formed by prefixing the articles *le*, *la*, *les* (or one of the possessive adjectives, *mon*, *ton*, &c.), to the comparative of superiority or inferiority; e. g., *l'amour propre est le plus grand de tous les flatteurs*, self-love is the greatest of all flatterers; *la gloire des conquêtes est la moins désirable*, the glory of conquests is the least desirable.

NOTE.—In the *superlative relative* the article must be prefixed to the comparative, no matter whether the adjective *precedes* or follows the noun; accordingly, "if the noun happens to precede the adjective, the article must be repeated before the adverb of comparison; e. g., *la nation la plus belliqueuse du monde*, the most warlike nation in the world.

The French language uses, besides the regular adverbs of comparison, also certain other adverbs to graduate, increase, or modify the force of the two degrees of comparison, and also of the positive degree. The force of the *positive* degree is increased by *fort*, *très*, *bien* (very), *extrêmement* (extremely, exceedingly), *infiniment* (infinitely), *trop* (too, overmuch); e. g., *il est très riche*, he is very wealthy; *elle est bien âgée*, she is very old; *le style de Fénelon est fort coulant, et infiniment doux*. The force of the positive is diminished or modified by *médiocrement*, *passablement* (moderately, tolerably): *il n'est que médiocrement instruit*; *il est passablement riche*.

The force of the *comparative* degree is increased by *beaucoup*, *bien*, *infiniment*, *même*, *encore*; e. g., *il est bien plus riche que son frère*, he is much richer than his brother; *elle est encore plus belle que sa sœur*, she is still more beautiful than her sister; *il est plus riche même que son maître*, he is wealthier even than his master. The force of the comparative is diminished or modified by *un peu* (a little), *tant soit peu* (somewhat; ever so little); e. g., *il est un peu plus grand que son frère*, he is a little taller than his brother; *vous l'auriez vu passer, si vous étiez venu tant soit peu plus tôt*, you would have seen him pass, if you had come a little (ever so little) sooner.

The force of the *superlative relative* is increased by *du monde*, *possible*, &c.; e. g., *son père était l'homme le plus obligeant du monde*; *revenez le plus tôt possible*.

Agreement of the Adjective with the Noun which it qualifies.

I. As has already been observed, the adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.*

Exceptions.

1. When a noun is followed by two adjectives one of which qualifies the other, both adjectives remain invariable; e. g., *des cheveux châtain clair*, light chesnut hair; *des étoffes rose tendre*, &c. In locutions of this kind the first adjective is looked upon in the light of a substantive (*des cheveux d'un châtain clair*, *des étoffes d'un rose tendre*, stuffs of a soft rose colour).

2. The adjective *nu* (naked), when placed before the substantives *bras*, *cou*, *jambes*, *pieds*, *tête*, remains invariable, forming with the noun a species of adverbial locution; *nu-tête*, bareheaded; *nu-pieds*, barefoot, &c. But in all other cases, *nu* agrees in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies: *toute nue*, *la vérité doit déplaire*; *conserver la nue propriété d'un bien*; *une morale nue cause de l'ennui*; *avoir les bras nus*, &c.

3. The adjective *demi* (half), when placed before the substantive which it qualifies, remains invariable, forming with the noun a kind of compound substantive: *une demi-heure*, *une demi-livre*. Placed after the noun, it agrees with it in gender, but remains always in the singular: *un mois et demi*, *une heure et demie*, *quatre pieds et demi*. Employed in a substantive capacity, as in *une demie* (half), *deux demies font un entier* (two halves make a whole), it takes the mark of the plural.

3. The adjective *feu* (deceased, late) remains invariable when it precedes the article or a possessive adjective: *feu la reine*, the late queen; but it agrees with the noun when placed immediately before it: *votre feu mère*, your late mother.

REMARK.—*Excepté*, *supposé*, *passé*, being participles, and not adjectives, in the proper acceptation of the word, the student will find the requisite information respecting them in the chapter on the Participle.

II. When the adjective (or participle used in an adjectival capacity) refers to two or several substantives or pronouns, it is put in the plural; and, if the substantives or pronouns happen to be of different genders, in the masculine; e. g., *son père et*

* The adjective used in an adverbial capacity to qualify a verb, is always invariable; e. g., *ils marchent vite*, they walk fast; *ces dames parlent trop bas*, these ladies speak too low.

son maître sont contents ; il a montré une prudence et un courage étonnants.

NOTE.—When two substantives of different genders are qualified by an adjective having a distinct termination for the two genders, as *bon, bonne ; grand, grande ; discret, discrète* ; the ear demands that the masculine noun be enunciated last : thus, in the above sentence for instance, it would be wrong to enunciate *prudence* last instead of *courage*.

Exceptions.

An adjective qualifying two or several substantives of kindred import, and which are not joined by the conjunction *et* (and), agrees with the last noun, as the one which strikes the mind most : *il a montré un courage, un sang-froid étonnant ; toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation continuelle.* The adjective agrees also with the last noun only, if the two nouns are joined (or rather severed) by the disjunctive conjunction *ou* (or) : *un courage ou une prudence étonnante.*

Compound Adjectives.

1. In compound adjectives formed of two adjectives, both components agree in gender and number with the noun qualified by the compound. Compounds of this kind are : *aveugle-né*, blind-born ; *premier-né*, first-born ; *mort-né*, still-born ; *ivre-mort*, dead-drunk ; *sourd-muet*, deaf and dumb ; e. g., *des hommes ivres-morts, des femmes sourdes-muettes.*

Exceptions.

a. The adjectives *mi, demi, semi*, remain always invariable in compound adjectives formed with them ; e. g., *une étoffe mi-partie blanche et noire ; des visitations semi-périodiques ; des nations demi-civilisées.*

b. When the first component of a compound adjective is used adverbially, the second adjective alone agrees in gender and number with the noun qualified by the compound : compounds of this kind are, for instance, *nouveau-né* (new-born), in which the adjective *nouveau* answers the purpose of the adverb *nouvellement* (newly ; newly-born) ; *clair-semé* (thin-sown, scarce, thin), in which the adjective *clair* stands for the adverb *clairement* (thinly ; thinly sown) ; *aigre-doux* (sour-sweet, sourish, sourish-sweet), in which the adjective *aigre*, stands for the adverb *aigrement* (sourly, sourishly ; sourly, or sourishly-sweet), &c.

REMARK.—*Frais-cueilli* and *tout-puissant*, though belonging to the same category of compounds as *nouveau-né*, &c., make in the feminine singular,

fraîche-cueillie, toute-puissante, and in the feminine plural, *fraîches-cueillies, toutes-puissantes*, in obedience simply to the demands of euphony.

2. In compound adjectives formed of an invariable word (adverb or preposition) and an adjective, or participle used in an adjectival capacity, as, *bien-aimé*, well-beloved; *bien-venu*, welcome; *mal-avisé*, imprudent; *mal-bâti*, ill-shaped; *contre-révolutionnaire*, counter-revolutionary, anti-revolutionary; the adjective or participle alone can receive the respective marks of the feminine and of the plural: e. g., *des enfants bien-aimés; les contre-révolutionnaires; Marie Antoinette était mal-avisée*.

3. The two compound adjectives *brèche-dents* (having a gap in one's teeth) and *chèvre-pieds* (goat-footed, having feet like a goat), are, of course, invariable; *un homme brèche-dents; un dieu chèvre-pieds, des dieux chèvre-pieds*.

Place of the Adjective.

In the English language the adjective is commonly set *before* the noun which it qualifies; in French the *reverse* is the case. However, as there are exceptions from the rule in English, so there are, and more numerous still, in French. Of course, a complete set of rules on the subject, embracing every possible contingency, cannot well be given in an elementary work like the present, and the student must therefore rest satisfied here with the most general and essential rules.

1. *After* the substantive are placed:—

a. Adjectives denoting a *physical property* (colour, shape, taste, &c.), as *rond, vert, blanc, oval, amer, acide*; e. g., *une table ronde*, a round table; *une figure ovale*, an oval figure; *un goût amer*, a bitter taste; *un fruit acide*, an acid fruit; *un habit vert*, a green dress, a green coat; *un chapeau noir*, a black hat, &c.

b. Adjectives expressing the names of nations; e. g., *un vaisseau anglais*, an English vessel; *l'armée française*, the French army, &c.

c. Participles past used in an adjectival capacity; e. g., *un enfant chéri*, a beloved child; *une armée vaincue*, a vanquished host, &c.

d. Dis- and poly-syllabic adjectives when qualifying a monosyllabic noun; e. g., *un nom célèbre*, a famous name; *un don précieux*, a precious gift; *un cas douteux*, a doubtful case; *un temps orageux*, stormy weather; *un prix fabuleux*, a fabulous price; *des murs inébranlables*, solid, immovable walls, &c.

e. Adjectives modified by an adverb, or followed by a

regimen; e. g., *un Monsieur infiniment poli; un homme enclin à l'avarice*, &c. However, if an adjective usually occupying a position before the noun, is modified by one of the shorter adverbs, *très, bien*, &c., the presence of the adverb need make no difference in the usual position of the adjective; e. g., *il a fait un très beau cadeau à sa fiancée*, he has made his bride a very fine present, &c.

f. Two or several adjectives referring to the same noun are usually placed *after* the substantive, and the last of them is joined to the preceding one by a conjunction*; e. g., *un homme jeune, beau, et riche; une femme bonne, aimable et vertueuse*. We may say, however, *le vice a terni les grandes et admirables qualités de cet homme*, vice has tarnished the great and admirable qualities of this man; *il a fait de longs et pénibles efforts; les grandes et fortes pensées viennent du cœur; de belles et mémorables actions; une fausse et trompeuse félicité*, &c.

2. Before the substantive are placed:—

a. Monosyllabic adjectives, with the exception of those denoting a *physical property* (vide 1, a); e. g., *un long discours; un fol amour; un bel édifice; un beau garçon*, &c.

b. Adjectives qualifying a noun followed by a regimen, are usually placed before the noun; e. g., *Milton, l'immortel auteur du Paradis perdu; l'élégant traducteur de Camoëns*, &c.

c. The following generally *precede* the noun: *ancien, brave, chétif, digne, divers, dernier, joli, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, riche, sage, triste, vilain, vieux*; except when happening to form one of a set of several adjectives qualifying the same noun.

3. A great many adjectives, more particularly those ending in *e* mute (except in *esque, ique, and ule*), have their place assigned them either *before* or *after* the noun, almost entirely as a matter of taste: *un véritable ami—un ami véritable; une charmante fille—une fille charmante; un aimable enfant—un enfant aimable*, &c.

4. When an adjective qualifies a proper name (in which case it is always preceded by the article), its respective position *before* or *after* the proper name serves to give a different meaning to the locution; viz., if the adjective stands *after* the name, it serves as an epithet, distinguishing the person to whom it is affixed from all others of the same name; whereas, *preceding* the noun, it simply denotes a quality which may be

* As regards the conjunction *et*, this is omitted whenever the adjectives are of analogous import (synonymous): *âme grande, magnanime*.

common to many ; e. g., *le spirituel Sidney*, the witty Sidney ; *Sidney le spirituel*, Sidney the witty ; *le sage et pieux Fénelon* ; *Charles le sage*, &c.

5. In the following locutions, the different position of the adjective imparts a different meaning to the noun :—

<i>un bon homme</i>	a simple harmless fellow.
<i>un homme bon</i>	an honest upright man.
<i>un brave homme</i>	a good honest man (a safe man to deal with—commercial term).
<i>un homme brave</i>	a valiant man, a brave man.
<i>un cruel homme</i>	a troublesome fellow, a bore.
<i>un homme cruel</i>	a cruel man.
<i>une fausse corde</i>	a string out of tune.
<i>une corde fausse</i>	a false or bad string.
<i>une fausse clef</i>	a false key.
<i>une clef fausse</i>	a wrong key.
<i>une fausse porte</i>	a secret door.
<i>une porte fausse</i>	a sham door.
<i>un furieux animal</i>	a huge animal.
<i>un animal furieux</i>	a furious animal.
<i>un grand homme</i>	a great man.
<i>un homme grand</i>	a tall man.
<i>une grosse femme</i>	a stout woman.
<i>une femme grosse</i>	a woman in the family way.
<i>un honnête homme</i>	a good, honest, upright man.
<i>un homme honnête</i>	a well-bred man.
<i>nouveau vin</i>	fresh wine, a new sort of wine.
<i>vin nouveau</i>	new wine.
<i>un pauvre homme</i>	a simpleton, a poor tool.
<i>un homme pauvre</i>	a poor man.
<i>un plaisant homme</i>	a ridiculous fellow.
<i>un homme plaisant</i>	a pleasant fellow.
<i>un petit homme</i>	a little man, a short man.
<i>un homme petit</i>	a mean, contemptible, pitiful fellow.
<i>un vilain homme</i>	an ugly man.
<i>un homme vilain</i>	a nasty sordid fellow.

and perhaps a few more.

Government of the Adjective.

Some adjectives express *absolute* qualities, and convey accordingly of themselves a definite and complete meaning. Of this class are, for instance, *bon*, *beau*, *grand*, *vertueux* ; * others require the addition of a complement for the full and complete enunciation of the quality which they are intended to express ; to this class belong, for instance, *enclin*, *digne*, *propre*,

* The adjectives belonging to this class may, however, also have a complement added to them to modify or define within more narrow limits the quality which they denote ; e. g., *beau à voir* ; *du vin bon à boire*, &c.

capable, plein, &c.; e. g., *un homme enclin au vice*, a man inclined to vice; *une conduite indigne d'une grande nation*, a conduct unworthy of a great nation; *un garçon plein d'esprit, &c.*

The *complement* or *regimen* of an adjective is expressed by a preposition followed by a substantive, pronoun, or infinitive, dependent on that preposition.

The prepositions governed by the French adjectives do not always correspond with those governed by their English synonymes. It may be laid down as a general rule, that French adjectives (or participles used adjectively) denoting *abundance, plenitude, want, scarcity, absence, privation, desire, regret, satisfaction, dissatisfaction, capacity*, and other ideas of kindred import, govern the preposition *de*; e. g., *je suis content de mon cheval*, I am pleased with my horse; *la chambre est pleine de fumée*, the room is full of smoke, &c.

French adjectives denoting *aptness, fitness, disposition, inclination, tendency, leaning, purpose, resemblance, conformity*, govern the preposition *à*.

Adjectives denoting *kindness* or *unkindness* of feeling or disposition towards individuals, take *envers* before their complement.

Some require *avec*, others *sous*, others *pour*, &c. It would lead us, however, too far, to pursue this subject more in detail.

Two adjectives may have one and the same complement, provided they happen to govern both the same preposition; thus, we may say, *il est utile et cher à sa famille*, he is useful and dear to his family: but if the two adjectives require different prepositions, as, for instance, *utile* which demands *à*, and *chéri* (beloved) which demands *de*, the proper complement must be given to each of them, and we must say, *il est utile à sa famille, et en est chéri*.

Adjectives of Dimension.

The English adjectives of dimension, *long, wide, broad, thick, high, deep*, may be rendered in French either by the corresponding adjective or by the corresponding substantive, with the preposition *de* preceding either the adjective or substantive of dimension, or the numeral denoting the extent of the dimension, or both: *cette tour a trois cents pieds de hauteur*, this tower is three hundred feet high; *cette tour est haute de trois cents pieds*; *un jardin de cent soixante pieds de long* (or *de longueur*); *une colonne haute de cent dix-sept pieds*.

In cases where there are two dimensions given, the English preposition *by* or conjunction *and*, as the case may be, is rendered in French by the preposition *sur*, which is substituted for the second *de*; e. g., *une galerie de trois cents pieds de longueur sur trente (pieds understood) de largeur*, a gallery three hundred feet long and thirty wide, a gallery three hundred feet by thirty, i. e., three hundred feet (long) by thirty (feet wide).

Some additional observations on the Qualificative Adjective.

1. An adjective standing as attribute to several substantives placed in order of gradation, agrees with the last noun (which forms the climax): *le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute prête*.

2. An adjective standing as attribute to several substantives or pronouns followed by a *collective* or *resuming* expression (i. e., an expression referring to the words preceding *collectively*, or to each of them *separately*; as, *tout, rien, nul, chacun, personne, aucun*), agrees with the resuming expression: *la fortune, les honneurs, la gloire, tout fut digne de lui*.

3. An adjective standing as attribute to two substantives (or pronouns), connected by one of the conjunctions *comme, de même que, ainsi que, aussi bien que*, agrees with the first of the two: *l'autruche a la tête, ainsi que le cou, garnie de duvet*.

4. When a noun of multitude accompanied by a substantive complement is followed by a qualificative adjective, the latter agrees either with the noun of multitude, or with the substantive complement; as a general rule, with the *former* if it happens to be a *general* collective: *la totalité des enfants, incapable de prévoyance, ne voit que le présent*; with the latter, if the collective happens to be *partitive*: *une troupe de jeunes filles timides et inquiètes*.

5. The qualificative adjective must always *clearly* and *distinctly* refer to a word expressed in the sentence. Thus it is incorrect, for instance, to say, *jaloux des droits de sa couronne, son unique ambition était de la transmettre à ses successeurs* (jealous of the rights of his crown, his only ambition was to transmit it to his successors), since the adjective *jaloux* refers here to none of the words enunciated in the sentence. *Riche et puissant, vous m'avez toujours été fidèle* (rich and powerful, you have always been faithful to me). In this sentence it is not clearly apparent whether the two adjectives refer to *vous* or to *me*; this ambiguity may readily be avoided by giving another turn to the sentence, as thus: *vous m'avez été toujours fidèle,*

quand vous étiez (or, as the case may be, *quand j'étais*) *riche et puissant*.

The same rule applies equally to the participles present and past.

6. In the French language, the adjective is never allowed to impose the law of accordance on the substantive (as it is occasionally in English, in expressions such as "*Dictionary of the French and German languages*"); locutions, therefore, such as "*les littératures française et allemande; les langues anglaise et italienne; les histoires ancienne et moderne*," are grammatical blunders. Phrases of this kind are elliptical, and each of the two adjectives refers in reality to a separate noun—the one to the noun expressed, the other to a noun understood; the actual meaning of them is respectively, *la littérature française et (la littérature) allemande; la langue anglaise et (la langue) italienne; l'histoire ancienne et (l'histoire) moderne*; therefore, either the noun should be repeated, or the article prefixed to the second adjective: *l'histoire ancienne et l'histoire moderne*, or, *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne; la littérature française et la littérature allemande*, or, *la littérature française et l'allemande*. The same rule holds equally good with regard to the ordinal numeral adjectives, *le premier, le second*, &c.; and also with regard to *l'un et l'autre* (both). Do not say, then, *les premier et second étages; les cinquième et sixième chapitres; l'un et l'autre métaux*; but say, *le premier et le second étage; le cinquième et le sixième chapitre; l'un et l'autre métal*.

7. Adjectives which are properly applicable to *persons* only, as *consolable, inconsolable, intentionné*, ought not to be applied to *things*: and vice versâ, adjectives properly applicable to *things* only, as *pardonnable, impardonnable, contestable, incontestable, inestimable, inévitable*, ought not to be applied to *persons*. Do not say, therefore, for instance, *la douleur de la mère était inconsolable*, the grief of the mother was inconsolable, *de tous ces criminels il est le moins pardonnable*: rather give another turn to the phrase, and say, *la mère était inconsolable dans sa douleur*, the mother was inconsolable in her grief; *de tous ces criminels il (est celui qui) mérite le moins qu'on lui pardonne*, of all these criminals he (is the one who) deserves the least to be forgiven.

The Academy sanctions the use of *déplorable* both for things and persons; it would, however, certainly appear more correct to confine its application to the former.

B. *Determinative Adjectives.*

We divide the determinative adjectives into three classes, viz., the *demonstrative* adjectives, the *possessive* adjectives, and the *indefinite determinative* adjectives.

The *numerals*, which are generally classed by grammarians with the determinative adjectives, will be treated of in a separate chapter.

1. *The Demonstrative Adjective.*

<i>Singular.</i>	
Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>ce, cet</i> (this, that).	<i>cette</i> (this, that).
<i>Plural.</i>	
Both genders.	
<i>ces</i> (these, those).	

Ce is placed before nouns masculine commencing with a consonant or an *aspirated h*, *cet* before nouns masculine commencing with a vowel or a *mute h*; e. g., *ce soldat*; *ce héros*—*cet officier*; *cet habit*.

The particles *ci* (here), and *là* (there), are often added to the noun, to impart greater force and precision to the demonstrative adjective; e. g., *ce livre-ci est fort bien écrit*, this book (here) is very well written; *cet homme-là veut vous parler*, that man (there) wishes to speak to you; *cette colonne-ci n'est pas si haute que celle de la Place Vendôme*, this column (here) is not so high as that of the Place Vendôme; *donnez-moi cette fleur-là*, give me that flower (there).

The demonstrative adjective *ce* must not be confounded with the demonstrative pronoun *ce*; the former always precedes a substantive, the latter is invariably joined to the verb *être*, or followed by the pronouns *que*, *qui*, *quoi*, *dont*: *ce sont des voleurs*; *c'est un mauvais garnement*; *ce qui convient à Jean ne convient pas toujours à Pierre*; *ce dont je vous avertis*; *ce à quoi je pense*; *ce que son frère vient de me dire*.

The rules for the repetition of the demonstrative adjectives, are the same as those for the repetition of the article (see p. 28).

2. *Possessive Adjectives.*

<i>Singular.</i>	
Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>mon</i>	<i>ma</i> .
<i>ton</i>	<i>ta</i> .
<i>son</i>	<i>sa</i> .
<i>Both genders.</i>	
<i>notre</i> , our.	<i>votre</i> , your. <i>leur</i> , their.

Plural.

Both genders.

mes my.*nos*, our.*tes*, thy.*vos*, your.*ses*, his, her, its.*leurs*, their.

Mon, *ton*, *son*, are substituted for *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before nouns feminine commencing with a vowel or mute *h*; e. g., *mon amie*; *ton humeur*; *son inconstance*: the ear demands this substitution.

Observations.

1. The possessive adjective agrees in French invariably with the noun to which it is prefixed; and not, as is the case in English, with the noun representing the possessor: e. g., *il aime sa fille*, he loves *his* daughter; *elle aime son père*, she loves *her* father.

2. When speaking to a person, with whom we are not on familiar terms, of his or her relations, politeness requires that we should put *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, *Messieurs*, *Mesdames*, *Mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive adjective; e. g., *Comment se porte Madame votre mère?* How is your mother? *Je viens de rencontrer Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs*, I have just met your sisters.

3. In addressing relations, custom requires the possessive adjective before the term of relationship; e. g., *venez ici, ma sœur*, come here, sister: except before *Papa* and *Maman*.

4. When speaking of a part of the body, or of a physical or intellectual condition or faculty, clearly appertaining to the subject of the sentence, the French language uses the article instead of the possessive adjective, since in such cases no doubt or ambiguity can possibly exist as to the person in whom the possession lies; e. g., *J'ai mal à la tête*, I have a pain in *my* head; *il a reçu un coup de feu au bras droit*, he received a shot in *his* right arm; *sa fille a perdu l'appétit*, his (or *her*) daughter has lost *her* appetite. If the part of the body, or the physical or intellectual condition or faculty, is represented as affected by the act of the subject of the sentence, a personal or reflective pronoun indicating the person to whom the part, &c., so affected appertains, is joined to the verb; e. g., *nous nous sommes lavé les mains*, we have washed our hands (we have to ourselves washed the hands); *le barbare leur fit arracher les yeux*, the barbarian had *their* eyes torn out, ordered *their* eyes to be torn out (the barbarian to them had the eyes torn out); *elle me prit la main*, she took *my* hand; *rincez-vous la bouche*, wash

your mouth (wash to yourself the mouth); *tenez-lui la tête*, hold *his* (or *her*) head (hold to him, or her, the head), &c.

REMARK.—The possessive adjective is used to designate an habitual complaint; e. g., *ma migraine m'a repris*, my headache has come back again; *sa goutte le tourmente*, his gout plagues him. Custom sanctions also the redundant use of the possessive adjective in some familiar expressions, as, *il se tient ferme sur ses pieds*, he stands firm on his legs; *elle l'a vu de ses yeux*, or *de ses propres yeux*, she has seen it with her eyes, or with her own eyes.

5. When the possession lies in an inanimate object, the possessive adjectives *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, corresponding to the English *its* (in some rare cases *his, her*) and *their*, can be used only if the possessing word forms the subject of the sentence; e. g., *la campagne a ses agréments*, the country has its charms; *l'Angleterre est protégée par ses flottes*, England is protected by her fleets; *chacun à son goût: Londres a ses parcs, Paris ses parcs d'artillerie*. But if the possessing word does not form the subject of the sentence, the possessive adjectives *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, are replaced by the article and the personal pronoun of the third person, *en*; e. g., *J'habite la campagne, les agréments en sont sans nombre; regardez ce tableau, n'en admirez vous pas la beauté?* look at that picture, do you not admire its beauty?

REMARK.—The possessive adjective is used, however, if the word denoting the object possessed happens to be the complement of a preposition; e. g., *j'ai vu Paris, j'admire la beauté de ses édifices*; I have seen Paris, I admire the beauty of its buildings.

6. With regard to the repetition or non-repetition of the possessive adjective, the rules are the same as those laid down for the repetition of the article (see p. 28).

3. Indefinite Determinative Adjectives.

Aucun, aucune, with the negation, no one, none, no; without the negation *aucun* signifies any. Plural, *aucuns, aucunes*.

Certain, certaine. Plural, *certain, certaines*, certain, some.

Chaque (of both genders,—no plural), each, every.

Maint, mainte, many a, many a one. Plural, *maints, maintes*, many.

Même (both genders), same, self. Plural, *mêmes* (both genders). Adverb, *même*, even.

Nul, nulle (requires the negation before the verb) no one, no. Plural, *nuls, nulles*, none.*

* *Nul* is used also as a *qualificative* adjective in the sense of *null, void*; e. g., *tous les décrets de l'usurpateur sont nuls*, all decrees given by the

Pas un, pas une (requires the negation before the verb), no one, not one.

Plusieurs (plural, both genders), several, many (some).

Quel, quelle, what. Plural, *quels, quelles*.

Quelconque (both genders) whatever, any. Plural, *quelconques*.

Quelque (both genders), some. Plural, *quelques*.

Quel que, quelle que, whatever, whatsoever. Plural, *quels que, quelles que*.

Quelque que (both genders), whatever, whatsoever. Plural, *quelques que* (*quelque que*, adverb, however, howsoever).

Tel, telle, such. Plural, *tels, telles*.

Tout, toute, every, any. Plural, *tous, toutes*, all: *tout*, everything; *tout*, quite, however—adverb, but *variable* before adjectives (or participles) *feminine* commencing with a *consonant* or *aspirated h*.

Some of these are, properly speaking, *indefinite numerals*; but as it would answer no practical purpose to sever them from their companions, we have deemed it best to place them here in the general list of indefinite determinative adjectives.

Observations.

1. *Aucun, nul, plusieurs, tel*, are sometimes used also in a pronominal capacity (as *indefinite pronouns*); e. g., *aucun n'a répondu*, no one replied; *nul ne sait si bien où le soulier le blesse que celui qui le porte*, nobody knows where the shoe pinches so well as he who wears it; *plusieurs sont d'avis que l'usurpateur finira sa carrière aux galères*, many are of opinion that the usurper will finish his career at the galleys; *je ne vis jamais rien de tel*, I never saw anything like it.

2. *Aucun* and *nul* (and, as a matter of course, *pas un*) exclude all idea of plurality, and can accordingly be used only in the singular; e. g., *aucun chemin de fleurs ne conduit à la gloire*, no flowery path leads to glory, none of the roads to glory are strewn with flowers; *nul plaisir n'égale celui que cause une bonne action qu'on a faite*, no pleasure equals that caused by doing a good action. To say *aucuns chemins, nuls plaisirs*, would be a grammatical blunder.

REMARK.—*Aucun* and *nul* are used in the plural, however, before nouns plural; i. e., such as have no singular number, as *annales*; *ancêtres*, ancestors; *funérailles*, obsequies; *pleurs*, tears; and also before the plural of nouns which are used in the plural number in a different sense from that attached to them in the singular; as, *gages*, wages, salary (singular, *gage*, token, pledge, pawn); *troupes*, troops, soldiers, men, forces (singular, *troupe*, a troop, band, company, gang, set, flock, herd, &c.): *aucunes troupes ne sont mieux disciplinées*, no troops are better disciplined, there are not better disciplined troops in the world.

usurper are null and void. The qualificative adjective *nul* stands invariably after the substantive, the determinative adjective *nul* always precedes the noun.

3. *Aucun* is used sometimes without the negation, in interrogative sentences, or in such as express doubt or exclusion; e. g., *aucune femme fut-elle jamais aussi malheureuse?* was there ever so unfortunate a woman? was there ever any woman so unfortunate?

4. *Chaque* requires invariably a substantive after it. Do not say then, *ils ont reçu cinq cents louis chaque*; but say, *cinq cents louis chacun*,* they have received five hundred louis each.

5. *Même* is used both as *adjective* and as *adverb*.

a. *Même* is an adjective—

(a) When it *precedes* the substantive: *c'est le même auteur qui a écrit Monte Christo*, he is the same author that wrote Monte Christo; *ce sont encore les mêmes raisons*, they are still the old reasons (the same reasons).

(b) When it stands after a pronoun or a single substantive; e. g., *les dieux eux-mêmes devinrent jaloux des bergers*, the gods themselves grew envious of the shepherds; *les sauvages mêmes sont moins cruels*, the savages themselves are less cruel.

b. *Même* is an adverb—

(a) When it serves to qualify a verb; e. g., *les magistrats doivent une égale justice à tout le monde, même à leurs ennemis*, magistrates (judges) owe an equal justice to every one, even to their enemies.

(b) When it is placed after two or several substantives; e. g., *les animaux, les plantes même, étaient au nombre des divinités égyptiennes*, animals and even plants were among the gods of the Egyptians.

Le même, la même, les mêmes, may be looked upon as a species of determinative pronoun: *l'homme que vous venez de quitter, est le même qui m'a volé ma bourse hier*, the man whom you have just left is the same who robbed me of my purse yesterday.

5. a. *Quelque* (some) is a simple adjective, and takes the mark of the plural (*quelques*); e. g., *quelques soldats l'ont maltraité*, some soldiers have ill-used him.

b. *Quelque*, followed by a verb, is written in two separate words: *quel* (adjective) *que* (conjunction); in this condition it means *whatever*, and the adjective part of it (*quel*) agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb, the conjunction *que* remaining, of course, unaltered; e. g., *quels que soient vos projets*, whatever your projects may be; *quelles que soient les lois*, whatever the laws may be.

* *Chacun, chacune*, each, everyone, indefinite pronoun. See that heading in the chapter on the Pronoun.

c. *Quelque* (whatever, whatsoever) followed by a substantive and the conjunction *que*, is an adjective, and agrees in number with the noun which it precedes; e. g., *princes, quelques raisons que vous me puissiez dire*, princes, what reasons soever you may tell me (whatsoever reasons you may adduce).

d. *Quelque* followed by an adjective, participle, or adverb, and the conjunction *que*, is an *adverb*, meaning however, howsoever, and remains accordingly unaltered; e. g., *quelque puissant que vous soyez*, however so powerful you may be; *quelque estimés que nous soyons*, however so esteemed we may be; *quelque adroitement qu'ils s'y prennent*, however so skilfully they may manage.

REMARK.—If a substantive follows after the adjective preceded by *quelque*, the latter is treated as an adjective, and agrees accordingly in number with that substantive; e. g., *quelques grands avantages que la nature vous ait donnés*, whatsoever great advantages nature may have bestowed upon you.

It will already have been remarked by the intelligent student, that *quelque* used in the sense of whatever, whatsoever, however, howsoever, demands invariably the subjunctive mode of the verb.

6. *Tout* is used both as an adjective and as an adverb.

a. The adjective *tout* signifies *every, all*, and agrees in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun which it qualifies: *tout homme, toute femme; tous les hommes, toutes les femmes; — nous avons tous une même origine*.

In locutions like the following: *sortir à tout moment, sortir à tous moments; de tout côté, de tous côtés; de toute sorte, de toutes sortes*, the respective use of either the singular or plural depends upon whether the idea which it is intended to convey, is *distributive* or *collective*,—in other words, whether the adjective is intended to correspond to the English *every* or to *all*: if to the *former* the *singular* is used, if to the *latter* the *plural*; e. g., *sortir à tout moment*, to go out every instant; *sortir à tous moments*, to go out at all instants (at all times).

b. The adverb *tout* signifies *quite*, and, followed by the conjunction *que*, also *however* (or rather *though, as*, put after the adjective or adverb). It is used in both acceptations, to qualify adjectives and adverbs; e. g., *ils étaient tout étourdis*, they were quite astounded; *ces demoiselles, tout aimables qu'elles sont,* ne trouvent pas à se marier*, amiable as (though) these young ladies are, they cannot get married; *tout élégamment qu'elle*

* *Tout que* is always followed by the indicative mode of the verb.

est vêtue, elle ne peut trouver personne qui l'admire, elegantly as (though) she is dressed, she can find no one to admire her.

REMARK.—*Tout* in its adverbial capacity is declined, however, like an adjective, if the adjective, or participle, following is of the *feminine* gender, and commences with a *consonant* or *aspirated h*; e. g., *elle est toute stupéfaite*; *toute belle qu'elle est*; *toutes haïes qu'elles sont*.

c. Tout immediately followed by a substantive unaccompanied by any determinative, is used as adverb in the acceptation of *quite, all*; a preposition preceding the substantive makes no difference in this; e. g., *cette femme est tout yeux*, this woman is all eyes; *cette maison est tout en flammes*, this house is all in flames; *elle est tout en colère*, she is quite in a passion (angry); *Un mérinos tout laine*, a merino all wool. In sentences of this kind, the substantive has the meaning and effect of an adjective, and it is as such that it is modified by *tout*; for instance, *cette maison est tout en flammes*, means simply, *cette maison est tout enflammée*.

d. Tout followed immediately by the adjective *autre*, and a substantive, is either adjective or adverb. It is adjective and agrees with the substantive, if the sense permits the shifting of *autre* from *before* to *after* the noun; e. g., *donnez-moi toute autre occupation*, give me any other occupation; here we may say, *donnez-moi tout occupation autre*: the *tout* then is adjective, and agrees accordingly with the noun. The *tout* is adverb, if the sense does not permit this transposition of *autre*; e. g., *donnez-moi une tout autre occupation*, give me a quite different occupation.

7. *Quelconque* is always placed after the noun, and is mostly accompanied by the negation: *il n'y a demande quelconque de sa part à laquelle je ne sois prêt à obtempérer*, there is no request he can possibly make that I am not willing to grant. Sometimes *quelconque* is used in conjunction with *aucun*: *il ne veut se soumettre à aucune autorité quelconque*, he will submit to no authority whatsoever. *Quelconque* is also occasionally used in *affirmative* sentences; *faites-le d'une manière quelconque, mais faites-le*, do it any way you like, but do it; *deux points quelconques étant donnés*, any two points being given.

8. With regard to the repetition or non-repetition of the indefinite determinative adjectives, the rules are the same as those laid down for the repetition of the article (see p. 28).

CHAPTER III.

THE NUMERALS.

THE numerals are divided into *cardinal* numbers and *ordinal* numbers.

I. *Cardinal Numbers.*

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>un, une.</i> | 42. <i>quarante-deux, &c.</i> |
| 2. <i>deux.</i> | 50. <i>cinquante.</i> |
| 3. <i>trois.</i> | 51. <i>cinquante et un.</i> |
| 4. <i>quatre.</i> | 52. <i>cinquante-deux, &c.</i> |
| 5. <i>cinq.</i> | 60. <i>soixante.</i> |
| 6. <i>six.</i> | 61. <i>soixante et un.</i> |
| 7. <i>sept.</i> | 62. <i>soixante-deux, &c.</i> |
| 8. <i>huit.</i> | 70. <i>soixante-dix (septante).*</i> |
| 9. <i>neuf.</i> | 71. <i>soixante-onze (septante et un).</i> |
| 10. <i>dix.</i> | 72. <i>soixante-douze (septante-deux).</i> |
| 11. <i>onze.</i> | 73. <i>soixante-treize (septante-trois).</i> |
| 12. <i>douze.</i> | 74. <i>soixante-quatorze (septante-
quatre).</i> |
| 13. <i>treize.</i> | 75. <i>soixante-quinze (septante-cinq).</i> |
| 14. <i>quatorze.</i> | 76. <i>soixante-seize (septante-six).</i> |
| 15. <i>quinze.</i> | 77. <i>soixante-dix-sept (septante-sept).</i> |
| 16. <i>seize.</i> | 78. <i>soixante-dix-huit (septante-huit).</i> |
| 17. <i>dix-sept.</i> | 79. <i>soixante-dix-neuf (septante-neuf).</i> |
| 18. <i>dix-huit.</i> | 80. <i>quatre-vingts (octante).</i> |
| 19. <i>dix-neuf.</i> | 81. <i>quatre-vingt-un (octante et un).</i> |
| 20. <i>vingt.</i> | 82. <i>quatre-vingt-deux, &c. (octante-
deux, &c.).</i> |
| 21. <i>vingt et un.</i> | 90. <i>quatre-vingt-dix (nonante).</i> |
| 22. <i>vingt-deux.</i> | 91. <i>quatre-vingt-onze (nonante et un).</i> |
| 23. <i>vingt-trois.</i> | 92. <i>quatre-vingt-douze, &c. (nonante-
deux, &c.).</i> |
| 24. <i>vingt-quatre.</i> | 100. <i>cent.</i> |
| 25. <i>vingt-cinq.</i> | 101. <i>cent-un.</i> |
| 26. <i>vingt-six.</i> | 102. <i>cent-deux, &c.</i> |
| 27. <i>vingt-sept.</i> | 200, 300, &c. <i>deux cents, trois cents, &c</i> |
| 28. <i>vingt-huit.</i> | 1000. <i>mille.</i> |
| 29. <i>vingt-neuf.</i> | 1100. <i>onze cents.</i> |
| 30. <i>trente.</i> | 1200. <i>douze cents (mille cent and mille
deux cents are rarely used).</i> |
| 31. <i>trente et un.</i> | |
| 32. <i>trente-deux, &c.</i> | |
| 40. <i>quarante.</i> | |
| 41. <i>quarante et un.</i> | |

* The form in parenthesis is not generally used, though it would certainly appear the more simple and correct of the two.

1300. *mille trois cents*, or *treize cents*.
 1400. *mille quatre cents*, or *quatorze cents*.
 1500. *mille cinque cents*, or *quinze cents*.
 1600. *mille six cents*, or *seize cents*.
 1700. *mille sept cents*, or *dix-sept cents*.
 1800. *mille huit cents*, or *dix-huit cents*.

1900. *mille neuf cents*, or *dix-neuf cents*.
 2000, 3000, &c. *deux mille, trois mille, &c*.
 1,000,000. *mille fois mille, un million*.
 1,000,000,000. *mille fois un million, un milliard*.
Un billion, un trillion, &c*.

Observations.

1. *Un* serves for the masculine, *une* for the feminine; all other cardinal numbers are of both genders. Preceded by the article, *un* is used (in connection with *autre*) in the capacity of a pronoun; and, in that capacity, it even forms the plural number *les uns* (see Chapter on the Pronoun).

2. *Vingt* and *cent* are the only cardinal numbers susceptible of receiving the mark of the plural,† and even these only when they happen to be multiplied by another number, as in *quatre-vingts*, eighty (*four times twenty*); *deux cents*, *trois cents*, &c., two hundred, three hundred, &c. (*twice hundred, three times hundred*); and even then they reject the mark of the plural when they are followed by another number; e. g., *quatre-vingt-cinq soldats*; *cinq cent trente écus*.

REMARK.—*Vingt* and *cent* used in lieu of the ordinals *vingtième*, *centième* remain always invariable: *chapitre quatre-vingt* (for *chapitre quatre-vingtième*), chapter the eightieth; *page deux cent* (for *page deux centième*), page two hundred (page the two hundredth); *en l'an sept cent quatre-vingt* (for *en l'an sept cent quatre-vingtième*), in the year seven hundred and eighty‡ (in the seven hundred and eightieth year); *en huit cent* (for *en l'an huit centième*), in the year eight hundred (in the eight hundredth year).

3. In the computation of dates, *mil* is substituted for *mille*: *en l'an mil sept cent soixante-trois*. Some writers restrict the substitution of *mil* for *mille* to the dates of the Christian era, and write, for instance, *l'an du monde deux mille cinq cent*.

REMARK.—*Mille* used in the sense of *mile*, is a common noun, and takes accordingly the mark of the plural: *cinq milles d'Angleterre font à-peu-près deux lieues de France*.

* The term *billion* is used by most people in France as synonymous and of the same value with *milliard*. The student will do well to bear this in mind.

† Even when used in a substantive capacity, the cardinal numbers remain invariable; e. g., *voici Mélitus, le chef des Onze*, behold Melitus (here is, this is, Melitus), the chief of the Eleven.

‡ We may here incidentally remark, that the French never express the *and* used in English to join two numbers together, nor the *on* put before days and dates.

4. If a cardinal number is followed by a participle past, the preposition *de* is inserted between: *nous avons eu cinq cents de tués, et neuf cents de blessés*, we had five hundred killed and nine hundred wounded.*

II. Ordinal Numbers.

These are formed from the cardinal numbers by adding to the latter the termination *ième*: *troisième*, the third; *cinquième*, the fifth; *trente-et-unième* (or also *trente-unième*), the thirty-first; *cinquante-deuxième*, the fifty-second. If the cardinal number to which the termination *ième* is to be affixed ends in *e* mute, that vowel is thrown out: *quatrième* (from *quatre*), the fourth; *cinquantième* (from *cinquante*), the fiftieth. In *neuf*, nine, the *f* is changed to *v*: *neuvième*, the ninth. Instead of *unième* (which is only used in the compound numbers, *vingt-et-unième*, *trente-et-unième*, *vingt-unième*, *trente-unième*), we say *premier* (feminine, *première*), the first; for second, we say both *deuxième* and *second*† (feminine, *seconde*); the latter is not used in compound ordinal numbers, we do not say *vingt-second*, but *vingt-deuxième*. With the exception of *premier* and *second*, the ordinal numbers are of both genders.

Observations.

1. *Dates* are expressed in French by means of the *cardinal* numbers, instead of the *ordinal*,—the first, *le premier*, forms the single exception from this rule; e. g., *le quatre Mars*, or *de Mars*, the fourth March (the fourth of March, March the fourth); *le vingt-deux Septembre*, or *de Septembre*, the twenty-second September (the twenty-second of September, September

* After a numeral adjective or a collective, the preposition *de* may be inserted before the modification which follows: *il y eut deux mille soldats de tués; il y eut un petit nombre de prisonniers de massacrés*. But we may say with equal correctness, *deux mille soldats tués, un petit nombre de prisonniers massacrés*. However, if the pronoun *en* replaces the substantive modified, *de* must be inserted before the participle or adjective, or another turn must be given to the sentence: *sur dix enfants il y en a cinq de légers, or qui sont légers*.

† *Second* implies a notion of *order*, *deuxième* a notion of *series*; thus we would say, for instance, *le second tome*, the second volume, no matter whether the work spoken of may happen to have two volumes or more, since the idea of *order* is independent of that of number. But when speaking of a work of two volumes only, we could not correctly say, *le deuxième tome*, because two do not form a series, and a *deuxième* necessarily presupposes the existence of a *troisième*.

the twenty-second); *le premier Mai*, or *de Mai*, the first of May, May the first. We have here incidentally to remark, that in expressing dates in French, the number and the article always *precede* the name of the month.

REMARK.—The article *le*, *la*, retains the vowel before *onze*, *onzième*; and *du*, *au*, *de la*, *à la*, are accordingly used before those two numerals instead of *de l'* and *à l'*; the *s* of *les*, *des*, is not drawn over to the initial *o*, nor is the *x* of *aux*: *le onze Septembre*; *le onzième siècle*; *histoire du onzième siècle*; *parlez au chef des Onze* (pronounced, day ong'z); *sur les onze heures*. *Sur les une heure* is also pronounced without drawing over the *s* of *les* to the initial *u*.

2. With the exception of *premier* and *second*, the *cardinal* numbers (without the article), are used instead of the *ordinals*, to mark the order of succession in a line of sovereigns of the same name: *Louis Seize*, Louis the Sixteenth; *George Trois*, George the Third; *Charles Douze*, Charles the Twelfth; *Henri Quatre*, Henry the Fourth, &c.; but *François Premier*, Francis the First; *Ferdinand Second*, Ferdinand the Second. *Quint* is used (instead of *cinq*) only in the case of the emperor Charles the Fifth, and of Pope Sixtus the Fifth: *Charles Quint*, *Sixte Quint*; but *Louis Cinq*, Louis the Fifth; *Charles Cinq*, Charles the Fifth (of France).

3. With the substantives *volume*, *tome*, *section*, *paragraphe*, *chapitre*, *page* (in references or quotations), the use of the *cardinal* numbers (with the exception of *un*), or of the *ordinal* numbers is optional, if the numeral adjective is placed *after* the noun: *tome trois* or *troisième*, *chapitre six* or *sixième*, *page deux cent*, or *deux centième*, &c. But the *ordinals* must be used if the numeral adjective precedes the noun: *le cinquième chapitre*, &c.

Besides the cardinal and ordinal numbers, the French language has, of course, like the English, several other terms of number. We will here briefly glance at the most important of them.

a. Collective Numeral Substantives.

2. *une couple*, *une paire*, a brace, a pair, a couple.
3. *un trio*, a trio, a leash.
4. *deux couples*, two couples.
6. *une demi-douzaine*, half a dozen, a half-dozen.
7. *une semaine*, a week.
8. *une huitaine*, a period of eight days.
9. *une neuvaine*, nine days of prayer.
10. *une dizaine*, half a score, a half-score.
12. *une douzaine*, a dozen.
15. *une quinzaine*, a fortnight, also a number of fifteen.
20. *une vingtaine*, a score.

24. *deux douzaines*, a thrave.
 30. *une trentaine*, a score and a half.
 40. *une quarantaine*, two score.
 50. *une cinquantaine*, two score and a half.
 60. *une soixantaine*, three score.
 100. *une centaine*, a hundred, one hundred (*un quintal* is used only in the sense of a cwt., a hundredweight).
 144. *une grosse*, a gross.
 200. *deux centaines*, two hundred.
 1000. *un millier*, a thousand, one thousand, one thousandweight.
 2000. *deux milliers*, two thousand.
 10,000. *une myriade*, a myriad, one myriad.
 1,000,000. *un million*, a million, one million.

b. Partitive or Fractional Numbers.

1. *l'unité*, unit, whole.
 $\frac{1}{2}$. *une moitié*, a moiety, a half.
 $\frac{1}{3}$. *un tiers*, a third, a tierce.
 $\frac{1}{4}$. *un quart*, a quarter, a fourth.
 $\frac{1}{5}$. *un cinquième*, a fifth.
 $\frac{1}{6}$. *un sixième*, a sixth.

And so on, prefixing simply *un* to the ordinal numbers. Besides the usual terms of *dixième* and *centième*, the words *décime* and *centime* are also used respectively for a *tenth*, and a *hundredth*, more particularly in the nomenclature of the monetary system of France.

c. Iterative Numbers (Adverbs).

These are formed by adding to the cardinal numbers, and also to some of the indefinite determinative adjectives, or, more correctly speaking, indefinite numerals, the word *fois*, time: *une fois*, once; *deux fois*, twice; *trois fois*, three times; *quatre fois*, four times; *dix fois*, ten times; *cent fois*, a hundred times; *quelquefois*, sometimes; *chaque fois*, every time, always; *mainte fois*, many a time, &c.

d. Multiplicative Numbers (both Adjectives and Substantives).

Simple, single, simple (*le simple*); *double*, double, two-fold (*le double*); *triple*, treble, triple, three-fold (*le triple*); *quadruple*, quadruple, four-fold (*le quadruple*), &c.

e. Ordinal Adverbs.

These are formed by adding to the ordinal numbers (to the feminine of the first two) the termination *ment*: *premièrement*, firstly, first; *secondement*, secondly; *troisièmement*, thirdly, &c

CHAPTER IV.

THE PRONOUN.

WE divide the French pronouns into four classes, viz. :—

1. *Personal Pronouns.*
2. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*
3. *Possessive Pronouns.*
4. *Relative Pronouns.*

SECT. I. *Personal Pronouns.*

The personal pronouns are subdivided into two classes; viz., *definite* personal pronouns, and *indefinite* personal pronouns of the third person.

A. *Definite Personal Pronouns.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK.—Some of the definite personal pronouns (in the capacity of either *subject*, or *direct complement*, or *indirect complement* without preposition) *precede* the verb (except in some rare cases which will be found below), others take their position *after* the verb, or stand alone, embodying in themselves (by ellipsis) the several constituent parts of a proposition or sentence: *qui m'appelle ?* Moi—who calls me? I (*je vous appelle*, I call you); *il est plus grand que toi*, he is taller than thou (than thou art, &c.). To facilitate the study and comprehension of this section, we will here call the *former* class of definite personal pronouns *conjunctive*, the latter, *absolute*.

FIRST PERSON, FOR THE TWO GENDERS.

Singular.

CONJUNCTIVE.

<i>Subject</i>	<i>je</i> , I
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>me</i> , to me, me
<i>Indirect Complement</i>	
<i>Direct Complement, or</i>	} <i>me</i> , me
<i>Direct Regimen</i>	

ABSOLUTE.

<i>moi</i> , I (me).
<i>de moi</i> , of me.
<i>à moi</i> , to me.
<i>moi</i> , me.

Plural.

<i>Subject</i>	<i>nous</i> , we
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>nous</i> , to us, us
<i>Indirect Complement</i>	
<i>Direct Regimen, or</i>	} <i>nous</i> , us
<i>Direct Complement</i>	

<i>nous</i> , we.
<i>de nous</i> , of us.
<i>à nous</i> , to us.
<i>nous</i> , us.

SECOND PERSON, FOR THE TWO GENDERS.

Singular.

CONJUNCTIVE.		ABSOLUTE.
<i>Subject</i>	<i>tu, thou</i>	<i>toi, thou.</i>
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>te, to thee, thee</i>	<i>de toi, of thee.</i>
<i>Indirect Complement</i>		<i>à toi, to thee.</i>
<i>Direct Complement</i>	<i>te, thee</i>	<i>toi, thee.</i>

Plural.

<i>Subject</i>	<i>vous, you</i>	<i>vous, you.</i>
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>vous, to you, you</i>	<i>de vous, of you.</i>
<i>Indirect Complement</i>		<i>à vous, to you.</i>
<i>Direct Complement</i>	<i>vous, you</i>	<i>vous, you.</i>

THIRD PERSON, MASCULINE.

Singular.

CONJUNCTIVE.		ABSOLUTE.
<i>Subject</i>	<i>il, he</i>	<i>lui, he.</i>
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>en, of him</i>	<i>de lui, of him.</i>
<i>Indirect Complement</i>		<i>à lui, to him.</i>
<i>Direct Complement</i>	<i>lui (or y*), to him, him</i>	<i>lui, him.</i>
	<i>le, him</i>	

Plural.

<i>Subject</i>	<i>ils, they</i>	<i>eux, they.</i>
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>en, of them</i>	<i>d'eux, of them.</i>
<i>Indirect Complement</i>		<i>à eux, to them.</i>
<i>Direct Complement</i>	<i>leur (or y*) to them, them</i>	<i>eux, them.</i>
	<i>les, them</i>	

THIRD PERSON, FEMININE.

Singular.

CONJUNCTIVE.		ABSOLUTE.
<i>Subject</i>	<i>elle, she</i>	<i>elle, she.</i>
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>en, of her</i>	<i>d'elle, of her.</i>
<i>Indirect Complement</i>		<i>à elle, to her.</i>
<i>Direct Complement</i>	<i>lui (or y*) to her. her</i>	<i>elle, her.</i>
	<i>la, her</i>	

Plural.

<i>Subject</i>	<i>elles, they</i>	<i>elles, they.</i>
<i>Indirect Regimen, or</i>	} <i>en, of them</i>	<i>d'elles, of them.</i>
<i>Indirect Complement</i>		<i>à elles, to them.</i>
<i>Direct Complement</i>	<i>leur (or y*), to them</i>	<i>elles, them.</i>
	<i>les, them</i>	

* With reference to persons, *y* is hardly ever used for the absolute forms *à lui, à eux, à elle, à elles*, except in connexion with verbs that are used of both persons and things, as *se fier, découvrir, &c.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN FOR THE THIRD PERSON, FOR BOTH NUMBERS AND BOTH GENDERS.

CONJUNCTIVE.

se, himself, herself, itself, themselves,
and also to or for himself, &c.

ABSOLUTE.

soi, himself, &c.
de soi, of himself, &c.
à soi, to himself, &c.

It need hardly be observed here that the English *it* is rendered into French by *il* or *elle*, according to the gender of the noun represented.

The pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, cannot possibly be confounded with the article, since the latter is invariably followed by a noun, whereas the pronouns are always joined to a verb.

Remarks on the Personal Pronouns.

I. As has already been mentioned, the conjunctive form of the personal pronouns *precedes* the verb.

Exceptions.

1. The personal pronoun conjunctive, used in the capacity of subject of the sentence, is placed after the verb in the *simple*, and between the auxiliary and the participle past in the *compound*, tenses. *a.* In interrogative sentences: *où suis-je?* where am I? *Qu'avez-vous fait?* what have you done? *b.* In certain *exclamatory* sentences: *est-elle belle!* how beautiful she is! (isn't she beautiful?) *c.* When the verb stands in the subjunctive mode, without any conjunction being expressed. *puissé-je le voir!* would I could see him! (oh, that I might see him!) *d.* In narration, when reporting the words of some one: *non, mon ami, lui répondis-je, il n'a pas perdu autant que vous; soyez tranquille, disait-il, je m'en charge.* *e.* When the verb is preceded by *aussi*, on that account; *peut-être*, may be, perchance; *encore*, and yet, besides; *toujours*, still; *en vain*, in vain; *du moins*, *au moins*, at least; the place to be assigned to the pronoun is optional, and we may say with equal correctness, *aussi est-il votre ami*, and *aussi il est votre ami*. However, the former way imparts greater force and elegance to the expression.

2. *a.* A personal pronoun conjunctive, forming the complement of an infinitive under the dependence of another verb, may be placed either before the governing verb, or before the infinitive; and we may say with equal correctness, *je viens vous*

chercher, and *je vous viens chercher*. *b.* In affirmative imperative sentences, the personal pronoun is put after the verb, *moi* and *toi* being moreover substituted for *me* and *te*: *ouvrez-moi la porte*, open the door to me; *embrassez-moi, ma fille*, embrace me, my daughter; *pends-toi si tu veux, mais laisse-moi tranquille*, hang yourself if you like (literally, hang thyself if thou likest), but leave me in peace. But if the imperative is accompanied by a negation, the general rule holds good: *ne me trompez pas*, do not deceive me. The pronouns *me* and *te* are used also when intervening betwixt an infinitive and the imperative of a neuter verb: *venez me voir, va te faire raser*.

REMARK 1.—If there happen to be two imperatives joined by the conjunction *et*, and, or *ou*, or, the pronoun complement of the second imperative may precede the verb: *polissez-le sans cesse, et le repolissez*, polish and re-polish it incessantly; *laissez-moi cette chaîne, ou m'arrachez le jour*, leave me this chain, or take my life.

REMARK 2.—Of two pronouns accompanying a verb in the imperative, the one in the capacity of *direct*, the other in that of *indirect* complement, the former is put first: *prêtez-le-moi*, lend it me; *cédez-le-lui*, cede it to him, give it up to him.

Exception.—When one of the pronouns, *moi, toi, le, la*, forms the direct complement of an imperative, being accompanied at the same time by the indirect complement, *y*, the latter takes precedence: *envoyez-y-moi; promènes-y-toi, menez-y-le*. It is, however, preferable in such cases to give a different turn to the sentence, and to say, for instance, *envoyez-moi là; promène-toi dans ce lieu, &c.*

II. When several personal pronouns conjunctive accompany a verb in the capacity of complements, they are respectively placed after one another in accordance with the following order of succession: *me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les, lui, leur, y, en*.

This rule must be taken in conjunction with the one given in the paragraph immediately preceding (I. 2. *b.* Remark 2), by which it is somewhat modified.

III. A personal pronoun employed as the subject of several sentences, must be repeated before each verb, if the several sentences are connected by any other conjunction than *et*, and; *ou*, or; *ni*, nor; *mais*, but: *nous détestons les méchants, parceque nous les craignons*, we hate (detest) the wicked, because we fear them; *elle est encore belle, quoiqu'elle ne soit plus de la première jeunesse*, she is still handsome, although she is no longer in her prime. With regard to the pronouns of the first and second person, they ought to be repeated also if the verbs are in different tenses: *je dis, et je dirai toujours*, I say and (I) shall always say; or when passing from an affirmation to a negation, or vice versâ: *vous voulez, et vous ne voulez pas*, you will, and you will not. In all other cases the ear, a correct

taste, and the demands of perspicuity, are left to decide on the propriety of repeating the pronoun subject or not. Personal pronouns employed as complements, must be repeated before each verb in a simple tense; before verbs in a compound tense, the repetition is optional, unless the pronouns happen to form complements of different nature, when the pronoun must always be repeated: *il nous a récompensés, et nous a adressé des éloges*,—the *nous* in the first sentence here is complement *direct*, the *nous* in the second complement *indirect*.

IV. The pronoun *nous*, we, when used in lieu of *je*, I, requires all its correspondents in the singular (with the exception of the verb, of course): *nous ne nous sommes pas cru obligé de lui répondre*, we (in lieu of I—the editorial *we*, for instance) have not deemed ourself (felt) called upon to reply to him.

V. The pronoun *le*, which makes *la* in the feminine, and *les* in the plural for both genders, may represent a *substantive* or an *adjective*. When it represents the former, or an adjective used in a substantive capacity, it agrees in gender and number with that substantive, or adjective used substantively:—

<i>Êtes vous Madame Roland ?</i>	<i>Je la suis.</i>
Are you Mrs. Roland ?	I am.
<i>Êtes vous sa mère ?</i>	<i>Je la suis.</i>
Are you his (or her) mother ?	I am.
<i>Êtes vous les fils de la maison ?</i>	<i>Nous les sommes.</i>
Are you the sons of the house ?	We are.
<i>Êtes vous les malades ?</i>	<i>Nous les sommes.</i>
Are you the patients ?	We are.
<i>Êtes vous la mariée ?</i>	<i>Je ne la suis pas.</i>
Are you the bride ?	I am not.

But when it represents an adjective, or a substantive used adjectively, *le* is used without reference to the gender or number of the adjective in question:—

<i>Madame, êtes vous malade ?</i>	<i>Je le suis.</i>
Are you ill, Madam ?	I am.
<i>Êtes vous cuisinière ?</i>	<i>Je le suis.</i>
Are you a cook ?	I am.
<i>Vos amis, sont-ils mariés ?</i>	<i>Ils ne le sont pas.</i>
Are your friends married ?	They are not.
<i>Messieurs Gladstone et Herbert sont-ils ministres ?</i>	<i>Ils le sont.</i>
Are Messrs. Gladstone and Herbert ministers ?	They are.

The intelligent student will already have perceived that the pronoun *le* agrees in gender and number with the noun-sub-

stantive or adjective, in all cases where they are preceded by the article, or a determinative adjective.

The pronoun *le*, placed under the dependence of a transitive or intransitive verb, or of *être*, had always better be expressed : *il n'est pas aussi riche que je le croyais ; elle est plus sotte qu'elle ne le paraît ; ils sont moins riches qu'ils ne l'étaient.*

VI. The pronoun *leur*, and the pronouns *lui*, *eux*, *elle*, *elles*, when employed as indirect complements, can be applied correctly to persons only, and to personified things : in all other cases, the pronouns *y* and *en* must be respectively substituted for them. Thus, you must not say, for instance, *la pièce que nous avons vu jouer avant-hier soir, m'a intéressé si vivement que je n'ai fait depuis que songer à elle*, the piece which we saw played the day before yesterday, has interested me so much that I have thought of nothing else since ; *ce chien est méchant, ne lui touchez pas*, that dog is vicious, do not touch him (do not go near him) ; *ces bâtiments n'étant pas assez grands, je leur ferai ajouter une aile*, these buildings not being spacious enough, I shall have another wing added (to them) ; *je viendrai vous rejoindre à la porte de cette maison, ainsi ne vous éloignez pas trop d'elle*, I shall rejoin you at the door of this house, therefore do not stray too far from it ; but say, *qu'y songer, n'y touchez pas, j'y ferai ajouter, ne vous en éloignez pas trop.*

VII. The pronoun *en* is rarely used for persons, except in answer to a question, and to avoid the repetition of *de lui*, *d'elle*, &c. : *avez vous peur de lui ? oui, j'en ai peur*, are you afraid of him ? yes, I am. It must never be used in a dependent sentence for the subject of the principal sentence ; hence you must not say, *il craint qu'on ne s'en plaigne*, but *qu'on ne se plaigne de lui*, he fears that complaints may be made about him. For things *en* is used most extensively. It would lead us too far to enumerate and explain the various ways in which the pronoun *en* may be rendered in English ; a brief allusion to its principal meanings must suffice here. It stands for *of him*, *of her*, *of it*, *of them* ; *from him*, &c., *with him*, &c., *about him*, &c. ; and accordingly also for the adverbial forms, *thereof*, *thereby*, *therewith*. The French language makes use also of the pronoun *en* in some cases, where that pronoun is not expressed in English by any equivalent or representative ; for instance, when objects are compared with reference to their number : *mon frère a quatre volumes de cet ouvrage, j'en ai deux*, my brother has four volumes of this work, I have two (scil. of them) : so also in sentences like the following : *si vous n'avez*

pas de chapeau, je vous en prêterai un, if you have no hat, I will lend you one (scil. of them, of hats); *avez vous reçu un paquet hier? Oui, j'en ai reçu un*, have you received a parcel yesterday? Yes, I have. Sometimes *en* is rendered in English by *some, any, none* (with the negation): *avez-vous encore de l'argent? je crois qu'il m'en reste encore*, have you still money left? I believe I have still *some* left; *à propos de livres, demandez à votre frère s'il en a encore des miens*, talking of books, pray ask your brother whether he has still *any* of mine; *donnez-moi des prunes. Il ne m'en reste plus (je n'en ai plus)*, give me some prunes. I have got *none* left (I have not got *any* left). Sometimes *en* refers to a whole sentence: *je lui en parlerai, s'il en est temps encore*, I will talk to him about it, if it is still time (scil. to talk about it).

VIII. The pronoun *y*, as already mentioned, is used for persons only in a few exceptional cases. For things it is used most extensively. It must not be confounded with the adverb *y*, there, thither, which it might be the more readily as the latter takes its place equally before the verb: *j'y vais*, I am going there (thither); *je m'y plais*, I find myself comfortable there; however, even as adverb, it has a pronominal character, referring always to some place antecedently named or understood. The pronoun *y* has the meaning of *à lui, à elle, à cela*, and is to be constructed in English by *of it, on it, to it, in it, at it, about it, &c.*, according to the construction of the corresponding English verbs. The French locution *il y a* corresponds to the English *there is, there are*. Sometimes *y* refers, like *en*, to a whole sentence: *on a fait tout pour vaincre sa résistance, mais on n'y est pas parvenu*, everything has been done to overcome his opposition, but without success (but one has not [arrived at it] succeeded in *it*—scil. in overcoming his opposition). *Y* must always refer to some antecedent; hence, expressions such as *ayant les yeux fermés je n'y vois goutte*, when my eyes are shut I see nothing; *on dirait que vous n'y voyez clair*, one would say you do not see clear; and others of a similar kind, are faulty, the *y* being here absolutely superfluous.

IX. The *absolute* forms of the personal pronouns are used, as already stated, when the pronoun embodies in itself alone the several constituent parts of a sentence, as in elliptical phrases; for instance, in answer to a question: *qui frappe? Moi* (or *c'est moi*)—who knocks? I (*me* is here commonly substituted in English also); or after *que*, than, as, and *comme*, as, like: *vous en êtes mieux informé que lui*, you have more accurate information on the subject than he (scil. has); *il ne mérite pas l'amitié d'un*

homme comme toi (tel que toi), he does not deserve the friendship of a man like thee (of a man such as thou art). The absolute forms are used also: 1. When the pronoun is governed by a preposition: will you go to Italy with me? *Voulez-vous aller en Italie avec moi?* 2. When two pronouns, or a pronoun and a noun, are connected by *et*, and; *ou*, or; *ni—ni*, neither, nor, in which case politeness requires also to place the first person last: *je vous punirai, toi et ton frère*, I shall punish you, thee and thy brother; *ni lui ni moi lui avons donné de l'argent*, neither he nor I have given him money; *eux ou lui m'ont volé ma bourse*, they or he have robbed me of my purse; *vous et moi nous avons fait cela*, you and I did it; *toi et lui vous êtes heureux*, thou and he are happy. 3. Before a relative pronoun or an infinitive: *toi qui sais tout*, thou who knowest everything; *moi, trahir le meilleur de mes amis!* me, betray my best friend! 4. When the pronoun is opposed antithetically to another pronoun, or to a noun: *vous me demandez toujours de l'argent, lui m'en donne*, you always ask me for money, he gives me money. 5. When the pronoun is separated from its verb by any explanatory incidental notion: *lui, en homme d'honneur, se chargea d'acquitter les dettes de son père*, he, like an honorable man, undertook to pay the debts of his father. 6. When the pronoun is used by way of emphasis to give greater force to a preceding statement or remark: *oui, il l'a tuée, elle, sa propre mère*, yes, he has killed her, her, his own mother. 7. When *seul*, alone, or *même*, self, is added to the pronoun: *moi-même, lui-seul, eux-mêmes*, &c.

X. The pronoun *soi* is always of the singular number, and applies both to things and persons; to the latter, however, only with one of the indefinite pronouns (either expressed or understood), or an infinitive for the subject of the sentence: *on doit rarement parler de soi*, one should seldom speak of one's-self; *chacun pense à soi*, every one thinks of himself; *il est essentiel de prendre garde à soi (qu'on prenne garde à soi)*, it is necessary that one should take care of one's-self; *ne vivre que pour soi, c'est être déjà mort*, to live for one's-self alone is being already dead; *en cherchant à tromper les autres, c'est souvent soi (or soi-même) qu'on trompe*, in attempting to deceive others we frequently deceive ourselves.

REMARK.—*Soi* is sometimes used also in reference to persons, to avoid ambiguity: *en remplissant les volontés de son père, ce jeune homme travaille pour soi*, in fulfilling the wishes of his father, this young man is labouring (working) for himself (acting for his own interest); *pour lui* would be ambiguous here, and would of the two refer rather to the father than the son.

With pronominal verbs *lui-même* refers to the complement, *soi-même* to

the subject: *le capitaine s'est sauvé lui-même*, the captain has saved himself, i.e., his own person; *le capitaine s'est sauvé soi-même*, the captain has saved himself, i.e., by himself, without the aid of others.

B. Indefinite Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

Autrui, other people, others.

Chacun—chacune, every-one, each.

On (l'on), one, people, they, we, somebody.

Personne, nobody, no one, none.

Quelqu'un—quelqu'une, one, some one. Plural, *quelques-uns—quelques-unes*.

Quiconque, whoever, whosoever.

Rien, nothing.

L'un l'autre—l'une l'autre, one another, each other. Plural, *les uns les autres—les unes les autres*.

L'un et l'autre—l'une et l'autre, both. Plural, *les uns et les autres—les unes et les autres*.

That the indefinite determinative adjectives *tel*, *nul*, *aucun*, *plusieurs*, *tout* (in the sense of *everything*, *all*), are used sometimes also in the capacity of indefinite pronouns, has been mentioned already in Chapter II. B.

Observations.

I. *Autrui* applies to persons only, and has no plural. It can never form the subject of a sentence, and is mostly preceded by a preposition; it occurs sometimes, however, also as direct complement: *sans dessein de tromper* *autrui*, without intention to deceive others.

II. *Chacun*, preceded by a noun or pronoun in the plural, requires *son*, *sa*, *ses*, when it stands *after* the direct complement, or when the verb has no direct complement: *ils ont apporté leurs offrandes, chacun selon ses moyens*, they have brought their offerings, each according to his means; *ils ont opiné, chacun à son tour*, they have given their opinion, each in his turn. It requires *leur*, *leurs*, when preceding the direct complement: *ils ont apporté, chacun, leurs offrandes; ils ont donné, chacun, leur avis*.

III. *On*, though essentially masculine and singular, assumes the feminine gender when it refers distinctly to a female—and the plural number, when the sense clearly indicates that the pronoun designates more than one person; in such cases, the adjective and the participle relating to *on*, take the mark respectively of the feminine, or plural: *quand on est belle, jeune et riche, on trouve facilement à se marier*, a handsome young girl with a fortune to boot will readily find a husband (*literally*, when one is handsome, young, and wealthy, one finds readily to get married); *lorsqu'on s'aime tendrement, on n'est*

pas heureux quand on est séparés, people who love each other dearly do not feel happy when they are parted.

The indefinite pronoun *on* is used very extensively in French, but more particularly for the purpose of avoiding the passive voice, which is had recourse to much less commonly in French than in English (except as regards verbs expressing *love*, *hatred*, *esteem*, *contempt*).

L'on is substituted for *on* principally after *et*, *si*, *ou* (or), *où* (where); and also, but much less generally, after *que* and *qui*, and after words ending in *é* or *i*: *et l'on dit*, *si l'on voit*, *ou l'on verra*, *ainsi l'on ne pourrait lui parler*, *je crois que l'on frappe*; but we say with equal correctness, *ainsi on ne pourrait*, &c., *qu'on frappe*. This substitution being resorted to simply for the sake of euphony, does not take place before words beginning with *l*, the dissonance produced by the clashing of two *l*'s affects the ear more disagreeably than the hiatus resulting from the meeting of a final with an initial vowel: *et* on le dit*.

At the beginning of a sentence *on* is always preferable to *l'on*.

IV. The indefinite pronoun *personne* is always masculine and singular. It is usually employed in the acceptation of *no one*, *nobody*, in which case the verb is accompanied by the negation: *nous n'avons vu personne*, we saw no one; *personne n'est assez sot pour le croire*, no one is stupid enough to believe it. *Personne* is used sometimes also elliptically, the same as *nobody* in English, in answer to a question: *avez-vous vu entrer quelqu'un ici?* *Personne* (i. e., *je n'ai vu entrer personne*); have you seen anybody go in here? *Nobody*.

In affirmative interrogative sentences, and in those expressing doubt, and also where it occurs as the second member of comparison, *personne* signifies *anybody*, *anyone*, and, of course, is not accompanied by the negation: *personne oserait-il l'affirmer?* would *anybody* dare to assert it? *je doute que personne en ait connaissance*, I doubt whether *anybody* is cognisant of it; *il sait faire la cuisine mieux que personne*, he is a greater adept in the art of cookery (he understands the art of cookery, he can cook better) than *anyone*.

The substantive *personne*, a person, is of the *feminine* gender. It cannot well be confounded with the indefinite pronoun, as it is always accompanied by the article, or a determinative adjective.

* The *t* being absolutely and invariably mute in the conjunction *et*, we may be permitted to look upon that letter as an equivalent simply of the acute accent, and to regard *et* in the light of *é*.

V. *Quelqu'un* agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers. Taken absolutely, and in an indeterminate sense, it is masculine and singular: *j'attends quelqu'un*, I expect somebody.

VI. *Quiconque* refers to persons only, and is always masculine and singular.

VII. *Rien* is masculine and singular, and is generally used in the sense of *nothing*, in which case the verb is accompanied by the negation: *vous n'avez rien à craindre*, you have nothing to fear. Sometimes *rien* is used elliptically, the same as *nothing* in English, in answer to a question: *que faites-vous là?* rien (i. e., *je ne fais rien*); what are you doing there? Nothing. It is used elliptically also in locutions like the following: *rien de beau que le vrai* (i. e., *il n'y a rien de*, &c.), the true alone is truly beautiful. When employed without the negation, *rien* signifies anything: *a-t-on jamais vu rien de semblable*, has anything like this ever been seen before? *je doute que rien lui réussisse*, I doubt whether he will succeed in *anything*.

VIII. *Of one another, to one another (of each other, to each other)*, are rendered respectively by *l'un de l'autre*, *l'un à l'autre*: *les femmes aiment à médire les unes des autres**, women like to backbite (slander) each other (women dearly love a bit of scandal at each other's expense).

Both is rendered also by *tous les deux*, or *tous deux*. Some grammarians draw a distinction between these two expressions, looking upon the former as synonymous with *l'un et l'autre*; upon the latter as synonymous with *l'un avec l'autre, ensemble*, the one with the other, together. This distinction, however, appears a little over refined, and is totally disregarded even by some of the most correct writers.

2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

Ce, this, that, it; *ceci*, this (this here), this thing; *cela*, that (that there) that thing.

Celui, *celle*, this. Plural, *ceux*, *celles*, these.

Celui-ci, *celle-ci*, this (this here, this one here), the latter. Plural, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, these (these here), the latter.

Celui-là, *celle-là*, that (that there, that one there), the former. Plural, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*, those (those there), the former.

* Whenever there are more than two objects, the plural *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*, must be used (as above); *mille soldats s'excitent les uns les autres au combat*, a thousand soldiers excite each other to the combat. To use *l'un l'autre* in the singular in such instances would be a grammatical blunder.

Observations.

I. The demonstrative pronoun *ce* must not be confounded with the demonstrative adjective of the same name; the latter is invariably followed by a substantive, the former is always joined to the verb *être*, or followed by the pronouns *que*, *qui*, *quoi*, *dont*.

Ce is used for *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, as subject of a sentence of which a noun substantive or a pronoun forms the attribute: *ce furent* eux qui me dirent d'attendre*, it was they who told me to wait; *bien loin d'être des dieux*, *ce ne sont pas même des hommes*, far from being gods, they are not even men. But where an adjective, or a substantive used adjectively, forms the attribute of the sentence, the personal pronoun must be used: *avez-vous vu le cheval que je viens d'acheter?*—*il est superbe*, have you seen the horse which I have just purchased? it is a superb animal. *Ce* may be used, however, even with an adjective, if relating, not to a particular noun or pronoun, but to a whole sentence: *c'est vrai*, it is true; *c'est juste*, it is just, true, right; *c'est possible*, it is possible (*viz.*, that what has just been said, or reported, is true, &c.).

Ce is also much used in conjunction with *être* to impart greater perspicuity, precision, and elegance to a sentence. Thus it is employed:—*a.* When the sentence begins with *ce* followed by a relative pronoun: *ce qui importe à l'homme*, *c'est de remplir ses devoirs*, what (that what) concerns man (what concerns man most) is to fulfil his duties; *ce que je déteste le plus*, *c'est la médisance*, what I hate most is slander.

REMARKS.—1. When in sentences of this kind the verb *être* is followed by a substantive, the use of the *ce* is imperative if that substantive stands in the plural number: *ce qu'on souffre avec le moins de patience*, *ce sont les injustices*, what we endure least patiently is injustice; but if the substantive is in the singular, the use of *ce* is optional: *ce que je dis* est, or *c'est*, *la vérité*, what I say is the truth.

2. When the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, the use of the *ce* is dispensed with: *ce que vous me dites là est horrible*.

b. The attribute of a sentence with *être* is often made to precede the verb by way of imparting greater emphasis to the idea expressed; in such cases the use of *ce* before the verb is resorted to: *le plus beau présent qui ait été fait aux hommes*,

* The verb *être*, used in conjunction with *ce*, is put in the *plural* only when followed by a noun in the plural, or by a pronoun in the third person plural (as in the instance given above). In all other cases, and even though followed by *nous* or *vous*, or by several nouns substantive (in the singular number, of course), the verb is put invariably in the singular.

après la sagesse, c'est l'amitié, the fairest gift that has been bestowed on man, after wisdom, is friendship. Whether the part preceding the verb figures as attribute, may be readily ascertained by changing the construction of the sentence, placing the part *following* the verb *before*, the part *preceding* the verb *after* it; if the sentence will bear this construction, the part preceding the verb forms the attribute of the sentence. Thus, in the instance given above, we may say, *l'amitié est le plus beau présent*, &c.

REMARKS.—1. In cases where the attribute is of limited extent, consisting of a few words merely, the use of the *ce* is optional, and we may say, for instance, with equal correctness, *le mobile de nos actions est*, or *c'est notre félicité*, our happiness is the moving spring of our actions.

2. Sometimes the verb *être* preceded by *ce* is placed at the head of the sentence and followed by the attribute, the subject being enunciated last; in sentences of the kind the subject generally takes *que* before it; or if it happens to be an infinitive, *que de*: *ce serait un coup de maître que de s'emparer de sa personne*, it would be a master-stroke to seize his person; *c'est un devoir que d'obliger ses amis*, it is a duty to serve one's friends; *c'est une belle chose que la sincérité*, it is a fine thing, sincerity (sincerity is a fine thing). Custom sanctions, however, the omission of the *que* in sentences of the kind.

c. *Ce* is used before *être* when that verb is preceded by two or several infinitives, and followed by a substantive: *jouer aux cartes, médire de son prochain, faire de méchants couplets, c'est l'unique, ou, si vous aimez mieux, la triple occupation de sa vie*, to play cards, slander his neighbour, and make bad verses, (such) is the only, or, if you like it better, the *triple* occupation of his life. If there is only one infinitive preceding the verb, the use of the *ce* is optional, and we may with equal correctness say, for instance, *être honnête homme était*, or *c'était, son unique ambition*, his only ambition was to be an honest man. The use of *ce* before *être* is imperative when that verb is both *preceded* and *followed* by an infinitive: *végéter c'est mourir*, to vegetate is to die; *voyager à pied, c'est voyager comme Thalès, Platon et Pythagore*, to travel on foot, is to travel like Thales, Plato and Pythagoras; unless the proposition should happen to be negative: *végéter n'est pas vivre*, to vegetate is not to live.

II. *Celui, ceux, celle, celles*, express a general idea, which requires to be more accurately defined, either by means of an indirect complement: *sa conduite dans cette affaire était celle d'un honnête homme*, his conduct in this business (matter, affair) was that of an honest man; or by a relative pronoun placed immediately after: *ceux qui font des heureux sont les vrais conquérants*, those who make people happy are the true conquerors.

REMARK.—*Celui* is sometimes omitted before the relative pronoun, in the same way as the personal pronoun of the third person is sometimes in English (“who steals my purse, steals trash,” &c.), to give greater conciseness, force, and elegance to the expression: *qui s’excuse s’accuse* (for *celui qui*, &c.), in cases of this kind the *qui* may be immediately preceded by a preposition governing the omitted antecedent of the relative: *tout vient à temps à qui sait attendre* (for *à celui qui*, &c.).

III. *Celui-ci* (*celle-ci*—plural, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*), *celui-là* (*celle-là*—plural, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*), correspond to the English this, that, this one, that one (plural, these, those), the latter, the former: *le corps périt, et l’ame est immortelle; cependant on néglige celle-ci, et tous les soins sont pour celui-là*, the body perishes, and the soul is immortal; yet the latter is neglected, and man bestows all his care on the former (yet man bestows all his care on the former, whilst he neglects the latter). In general propositions relating to persons, *celui-ci*, &c., *celui-là*, &c., are sometimes used instead of *celui*, &c., as *antecedent* to the relative, provided there be some words intervening between the two pronouns: *ceux-là sont à blâmer qui vous ont perdu par leur indulgence mal-entendue*, those are to be blamed that have destroyed you by their mistaken over-indulgence. *Celui-ci*, &c., may, however, be followed also *immediately* by the relative, in sentences where the *this*, *that*, are placed in direct opposition: *ces deux garçons ne sont jamais d’accord: si ce n’est pas celui-ci qui cherche querelle, c’est celui-là*, these two boys can never agree: if it is not this one that seeks a quarrel, it is that one; or where the relative may be considered to stand in lieu of a conjunction (*parceque*, since, because; *quoique*, though, if) and one of the personal pronouns of the third person: *voici les deux vieilles dont je vous ai parlé; celle-ci qui a ses quatre-vingt-dix ans bien sonnés, est plus robuste et active que celle-là, qui n’en a pas encore soixante-quinze*, here are the two old women whom I mentioned to you; this one who is (*though, though she is*) past ninety, is (yet) more robust and active than that one who is (*though, though she is*) not yet seventy.

Celui-là, *ceux-là* are used sometimes also, in conversational language, for *cela*, in expressions of approbation or disapprobation: *celui-là est un peu fort*, this is coming it a little strong.

IV. *Ceci*, *cela*, this, that,—this thing, that thing,—are both masculine, and have no plural. They apply only to things mentioned or pointed at in a general way, and not antecedently named; *ceci* is used with reference to the nearer, *cela* with reference to the remoter object: *que veut dire ceci?* what does this mean? *ne touchez pas à cela*, do not touch that; *ceci est bon, mais cela ne vaut rien*, this is good, but that is worth

nothing (worthless, bad). If only one object is spoken of, *cela* may be used also in the sense of *this*: *qu'avez-vous payé pour cela?* what did you pay for this?

In the familiar style, *cela* is applied sometimes to persons—both individually and collectively—but mostly with a contemptuous meaning implied in it: *cela se donne des airs de prince, et cela n'a pas le sou*, the fellow gives himself the airs of a prince, and he is as poor as a churchmouse.

3. Possessive Pronouns.

Singular.		Plural.	
Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>le mien</i>	<i>la mienne</i> , mine (my own)	<i>les miens</i>	<i>les miennes</i> .
<i>le tien</i>	<i>la tienne</i> , thine (thy own)	<i>les tiens</i>	<i>les tiennes</i> .
<i>le sien</i>	<i>la sienne</i> , his, hers (his, her, one's own)	<i>les siens</i>	<i>les siennes</i> .
<i>le nôtre</i>	<i>la nôtre</i> , ours (our own)	<i>les nôtres</i>	} for both genders.
<i>le vôtre</i>	<i>la vôtre</i> , yours (your own)	<i>les vôtres</i>	
<i>le leur</i>	<i>la leur</i> , theirs (their own)	<i>les leurs</i>	

Observations.

I. The possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun which they represent: they must always refer to a substantive antecedently expressed: *mon père et le vôtre viennent de sortir*, my father and yours are just gone out (have just left); *son frère s'est battu en duel avec le tien*, his brother has fought a duel with thine; *vos ennemis sont aussi les nôtres*, your enemies are also ours. Thus it is incorrect, for instance, to commence a letter with, *j'ai reçu la vôtre* (instead of *j'ai reçu votre lettre*), I have received *yours*—there being no noun enunciated here for the pronoun to refer to.

REMARK.—The possessive pronouns are, however, sometimes used also in the capacity of substantives; in which capacity, of course, the preceding rule does not apply to them; *le mien et le tien sont la source de toutes les querelles*, the *meum* and *tuum* are at the bottom of all quarrels; *il y met toujours du sien*, he always adds some of his own.

Les miens, les tiens, &c., used substantively, means *my, thy, his, &c., friends, kindred, family, relations, tribe, party, &c.*: *les vôtres ont combattu vaillamment*, your party (people, army, &c.) have fought valiantly; *il est allé en Amérique avec les siens*, he is gone to America with his family.

II. *Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, when used with the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, are rendered in French by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*: these shoes are *mine*, *ses souliers sont à moi*; is this horse *yours*? *ce cheval est-il à vous*?

III. *Mine, thine, &c.*, in the English expressions, *a friend of mine, an aunt of hers, a creditor of his, a trick of his*, and others of a similar kind, are rendered in French by the corresponding possessive adjective: *un de mes amis, une de ses tantes, un de ses créanciers, un de ses tours*.

4. Relative Pronouns.

For both Genders and both Numbers.

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| 1. <i>qui</i> | who, which (who, whom, in interrogative sentences). |
| <i>de qui, dont</i> | of whom, whose, of which. |
| <i>à qui</i> | to whom. |
| <i>que</i> | whom, which (never used with prepositions). |

Singular.

- | Mas. | Fem. | |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. <i>lequel</i> | <i>laquelle</i> | who, whom, which. |
| <i>duquel</i> | <i>de laquelle</i> | of which (whose, of whom). |
| <i>auquel</i> | <i>à laquelle</i> | to which, to whom. |

Plural.

- | Mas. | Fem. | |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>lesquels</i> | <i>lesquelles</i> | who, whom, which. |
| <i>desquels</i> | <i>desquelles</i> | of which (whose, of whom). |
| <i>auxquels</i> | <i>auxquelles</i> | to which, to whom. |

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 3. <i>quoi</i> | what, what thing, which thing. |
| <i>de quoi</i> | of what, of what thing, of which thing. |
| <i>à quoi</i> | to what, to what thing, to which thing. |

4. Relative pronominal adverbs: *où*, where, when, whither (in which, into which); *d'où*, whence, wherefrom (from which); *par où*, through which, by which, with which, which way; *par où* is used in conjunction with *passer, venir, &c.*, to denote motion through a place or part; *par où êtes-vous venu?* which way did you come? *through* or *by* which way, or *through* or *by* which part, have you come? *par où commencerons-nous?* what shall we begin with? where shall we commence at? with which part shall we begin? *tout le monde sait maintenant les infâmes moyens, les viles menées, par où l'usurpateur parvint à ses fins*, everybody now knows the infamous means, the vile intrigues, by which the usurper attained his end.

Observations.

I. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person: *moi qui suis aimé*, I who am beloved; *toi qui es bon et généreux*, thou who art good and generous; *lui qui est innocent*, he who is innocent; *elle qui est bonne et*

généreuse ; *elles* qui sont *innocentes* ; *nous* qui sommes *estimés*, we who are esteemed ; *vous* qui êtes *battus*, you who are beaten ; (when *vous*, as pronoun of polite address, is used in lieu of *toi*, the adjective or participle relating to the relative which represents the personal pronoun, is, of course, put in the singular : *vous* qui êtes *battu*, you who are beaten ;) *la lettre* que j'ai reçue, the letter which I have received ; *les lettres* que j'ai reçues.

REMARK.—The adjective having of itself neither gender nor number,* cannot serve as antecedent to a relative pronoun. Hence you must not say, for instance, *nous étions deux* qui étaient *du même avis*, but, *nous étions deux* qui étions *du même avis*, we were two of us of the same opinion (we were two who were of the same opinion), giving for antecedent to the relative pronoun the pronoun to which the adjective relates. However, if the adjective is used substantively, and is accordingly preceded by the article, it is made the antecedent to the relative : *vous êtes le seul* qui m'ait donné *de bons conseils*, you are the only one who has given me good advice (not *qui m'avez donné*, who have given me) ; *vous êtes les cinq* qui ont été élus, you are the five who have been elected ; but *vous êtes cinq* qui avez été élus, you are five that have been chosen.

II. The relative must always be placed as near as possible to its antecedent, so as to point out clearly and distinctly its correspondence with the latter : *la paresse est un vice* que *les hommes surmontent difficilement*, laziness (indolence) is a vice which it is difficult to overcome ; *il y a dans Pline des lettres* dont *le style est admirable*, there are letters in Pliny (in Pliny letters) of which the style is admirable—(not *il y a des lettres dans Pline* dont, &c., as the *dont* might here equally refer to *Pline*) ; *on trouve dans ces discours des maximes* qui sont *contraires à la morale*, there are principles (maxims) enunciated in these lectures (there are in these lectures principles enunciated) which are contrary to morality—(not *on trouve des maximes dans ces discours* qui, &c., as the *qui* might here equally refer to *discours*). Deviations from this rule are questionable even in poetry.

REMARK.—A pronoun antecedent forming the direct complement or regimen of a verb, may be separated from its relative by the latter : *je le vois* qui court, I see him running. With regard to the intervention of a complement of the antecedent between the latter and its relative, see IV. (substitution of *lequel*, &c., for *qui*, *que*, *dont*).

III. In English the relative pronouns are frequently understood ; in French they must always be expressed : the man

* The adjective has of itself neither gender nor number, but it *assumes* these properties ; or, more correctly speaking, it adopts certain terminations, in order to mark more clearly the relation in which it stands to the noun or pronoun qualified by it.

you saw yesterday, *l'homme que vous avez vu hier*; have you received the money you were expecting? *avez-vous reçu l'argent que vous attendiez*?

IV. *Qui*, *que*, and *dont*, apply both to persons and things: *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, are substituted respectively for *qui*, *que*, and *dont*; but in cases only where such substitution may serve to clear a sentence from ambiguity: *je viens de parler au mari de sa sœur lequel est sur le point de partir pour l'Amérique*, I have just spoken to his (or her) brother-in-law (to the husband of his [or her] sister), who is on the point of starting for America—(not *qui est sur le point*, since this would equally apply to *sœur*); *je dois recevoir une lettre de mes enfants laquelle j'attends avec impatience*, I am to receive a letter from my children which I am impatiently waiting for—(not *que j'attends*, since this would equally apply to *enfants*); *la bonté de votre père, de laquelle vous connaissez la grandeur, doit vous rassurer*, the kindness of your father, of which you know the greatness (extent), must reassure you—(not *dont vous connaissez*, since this would equally apply to *père*). But whenever the meaning is perfectly clear, *qui*, *que*, and *dont* ought to be used: *l'homme qui est venu nous voir*, the man who came to see us; *on l'a forcée de remettre entre les mains de la police tous les objets de prix dont son amant, le prétendu comte, lui avait fait cadeau*, she has been compelled to deliver up to the police all the valuables presented to her by her lover, the pretended count—(all the valuable articles of which her lover, the pretended count, had made her a present); *c'est un brave garçon que tout le monde estime*, he is a worthy fellow whom every one esteems.

REMARK.—With the verb *plaire* we sometimes find *ce que* instead of *ce qui*: *croyez-vous qu'il fera ce qu'il vous plaira* (scil., *qu'il fasse*)? do you think he will do what it shall please you (he should do)? *il plaira* figures here as the future of a unipersonal verb (*il plaît*), and the *que* is governed by *qu'il fasse* understood. In *croyez-vous qu'il fera ce qui vous plaira*? do you think he will do what shall please you, *plaira* figures as the future of the personal verb *plaire*, and *qui* is the subject.

V. *Qui* preceded by a preposition (*de*, *à*, *parmi*, *en*, *dans*, *avec*, *sous*, &c.) is used only of persons or things personified: *le général B——, à qui il s'adressa, lui donna le conseil de*, &c., General B——, to whom he applied, gave him the advice to, &c.; *rocher à qui je me plains*, rock to whom I complain; *le lieutenant avec qui votre frère s'est battu ce matin, n'a reçu qu'une légère blessure au bras droit*, the lieutenant with whom your brother fought this morning, has only received a slight wound in the right arm.

Dont (or as the case may be, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*—see IV.) is generally used instead of *de qui*, more particularly when a personal pronoun follows: *le général dont il possédait toute la confiance*, &c., the general whose entire confidence he enjoyed, &c.

Sometimes a noun governed by a preposition intervenes between the antecedent and the relative, preceded by *de*, in which case *duquel* (*de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*) must be used, except the noun substantive intervening happens to be governed by *de* or *à*, when *de qui* is equally admissible: *le ministre à la sagesse duquel* (or *de qui*) *le pays doit sa prospérité*, the minister to whose wisdom (to the wisdom of whom) the country owes its prosperity; *c'est un homme de la bonne foi duquel* (or *de qui*) *on ne peut douter*, he is a man of whose good faith (honesty) there can be no doubt; *la jeune fille avec le frère de laquelle j'ai voyagé l'année dernière*, the young girl with whose brother I travelled last year.

Whose, denoting possession in a material sense, is rendered by *à qui*: the gentleman whose these houses are lives in London, *le monsieur à qui sont ces maisons réside à Londres*.

De qui should be used when the verb expresses *transmission* from one individual to another: *le soldat de qui je tiens cette nouvelle*, the soldier from whom I had that intelligence. *Dont* is preferred to denote *descent* or *origin*: *la famille dont sa femme sort*, the family of which his wife comes; *les chefs de brigands dont ces rois sont descendus*, the robber chiefs from whom these kings are descended. The pronominal adverb *d'où** is used with *sortir*, *descendre*, *venir*, to denote real motion or departure from, out of, &c.: *la ville d'où je viens*, the town from which (whence) I come (the town I come from); *Vénus remonte dans un nuage d'où elle était sortie*, Venus reascends in a cloud from which (whence) she had issued forth.

With the prepositions *parmi*, *sous*, and *dans*, *lequel* (*laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*) is preferable to *qui*: *les voleurs parmi lesquels il y avait plusieurs jeunes gens*, &c., the robbers, among whom there were several young men, &c.; *les généraux sous lesquels il avait servi*, the generals under whom he had served;

* The pronominal adverbs *où*, *d'où*, *par où*, are used of things only. As regards *où*, we may here incidentally remark, that after a substantive expressing an idea of time, the conjunction *que* may be substituted for *où*: *à l'instant où* (or *qu'il*) *entra*, the moment he entered (when he entered, that he entered); *à l'époque où* (or *que*) *la guerre éclata*, at the time when (that) the war broke out.

le régiment dans lequel *il s'était fait enrôler*, the regiment in which he had enlisted. But with the preposition *en*, *qui* should always be used: *le ministre en qui le peuple avait confiance*, the minister in whom the people had confidence.

VI. As has already been stated in the preceding section, *qui* with a preposition can be used only of *persons* and things *personified*. With reference to *things*, *lequel*, &c., must be substituted for it, whenever the relative is preceded by a preposition: * *l'étude des sciences physiques à laquelle* (not *à qui*) *je consacre mes loisirs*, the study of the physical sciences to which I devote my leisure; *le cheval sur lequel il était monté*, the horse on which he was mounted. In poetry, however, departures from this rule cannot well be avoided, as locutions such as *sous lequel*, *par laquelle*, &c., cannot be readily introduced into a poetic line without impairing its smoothness and harmony.

VII. *Que* is used in some cases in lieu of *à qui* or *dont*: *c'est à lui qu'il faut vous adresser*, it is to him that you must apply; *de la façon qu'il a arrangé l'affaire*, in the manner that he has arranged the matter; the *que* corresponds here to the English *that*.

VIII. That the *demonstrative* pronoun, antecedent to *qui*, is sometimes omitted, has been stated already in the section on the demonstrative pronouns (p. 87).

IX. *Quoi* is only used of things, and is always preceded by a preposition; it occurs, moreover, but rarely, in reference to a noun substantive: *la chose à quoi † je pense*, the matter of which I am thinking (what I am thinking about); *les raisons pourquoi* (pour quoi) *j'ai pris cette résolution*, the reasons why I have taken this resolution; *voilà les conditions sans quoi je ne peux rien faire*, these are the terms without which I can do nothing. It is used principally in reference to a subject of a general and indefinite nature, such as *ce*, *rien*, and also after *voilà*: *c'est de quoi je ne m'occupe guère*, that is what troubles me but little (that does not trouble me much—that engages my attention but little); *c'est pourquoi on lui a refusé la permission de venir voir son père*, that is (the reason) why they have refused him permission to come and see his father (it is on that account that permission to visit his father has been denied him); *il n'y*

* Except the preposition *de*; since, as we have seen in section IV., *dont* is used instead of *duquel*, &c., whenever the meaning is perfectly clear, so that no doubt can arise as to the antecedent to which the relative corresponds.

† Even here, however, *à laquelle*, *sans lesquelles*, would be more correct.

a rien * sur quoi *il y ait eu plus de discussion*, there is nothing on which there has been more discussion; *voilà de quoi je me plains*, that is what I complain of; *c'est en quoi vous vous trompez*, it is here (in this, in that) that you are mistaken (there you are mistaken).

De quoi is used extensively in the sense of something about, something of, something with, &c.: *il n'y a pas de quoi me remercier*, there is nothing to thank me for (there is no occasion for thanks—I have done nothing to deserve thanks); *ce pauvre garçon n'a pas de quoi payer son loger*, this poor fellow has not got the wherewithal to pay his rent; *on lui donnera de quoi écrire*, they will give him something to write about; *elle a de quoi pleurer*, she has something to weep for; *à quoi* is used similarly: *il y trouvera à quoi s'appliquer*, he will find something there (in it) to apply himself to (to occupy himself with).

Quoi may also refer to a whole sentence: *il a cru qu'on lui rendrait son argent*, en quoi *il s'est trompé* (i. e., *en croyant qu'on lui rendrait son argent*), he thought his money would be returned to him, in (the) which he made a mistake (in [the] which he was mistaken).

Qui (*lequel, laquelle*), *que, quoi* absolute, i. e., used *without an antecedent*, as in questions both *direct* and *indirect*.

Qui absolute stands for both *who* and *whom*: *qui vous a dit cela?* *who* has told you so? *qui inviterons-nous?* *whom* shall we invite? *il ne sait pas qui lui a envoyé cette lettre*, he does not know *who* sent him that letter; *je voudrais bien savoir qui l'on a envoyé à Constantinople*, I should like to know *whom* they have sent to Constantinople; *de qui parlez-vous?* of *whom* are you speaking? *à qui l'avez-vous donné?* to *whom* have you given it? It stands also for *which* (out of two or out of several), and *whether* † (out of two). *Qui* absolute is used of persons only. *Lequel (laquelle)*, in the sense of *which* (out of two or out of several), or *whether* (out of two), is used both of persons and things. Some grammarians put the preposition *de* before both nouns and pronouns following *qui* or *lequel* absolute, used in the sense of *which* or *whether*: *Qui de vous ou de moi*

* After *rien*, *dont* is preferred to *de quoi* or *duquel*; and we always say, *tout ce dont*, never *tout ce de quoi*.

† *Whether*, in the sense of *which one out of two*, is not much used now by English writers; it is, however, perfectly legitimate.

sera récompensé, which (of us two) will be rewarded, you or I (whether shall I or you be rewarded)? *Qui était le plus grand général de Wellington ou de Soult?* which was the greater general (of the two) Wellington or Soult? *Lequel préférez-vous de Thackeray ou de Dickens?* which do you prefer, Thackeray or Dickens? Others reject the use of the preposition *de* in sentences of this kind, and say: *qui sera récompensé, vous ou moi?* *Qui était le plus grand général, Wellington ou Soult?* *Lequel préférez-vous, Thackeray ou Dickens?* The former look upon the nouns or pronouns here as indirect complements of *qui* or *lequel*, and which accordingly require the preposition before them; the latter regard the sentence as consisting of three propositions, one full and two elliptical ones: *qui sera récompensé, vous* (serez-vous récompensé), *ou moi* (serai-je récompensé); *lequel préférez-vous, Thackeray* (préférez-vous Thackeray) *ou Dickens* (préférez-vous Dickens)?

The Academy having abstained from pronouncing a decided opinion on the disputed point, either way may be considered correct.

Que and *quoi* absolute are used of things only; the former never takes a preposition before it, the latter is hardly ever used except with a preposition preceding or following it: *que faites-vous là?* what are you doing there? *je ne sais que dire*, I do not know what to say; *à quoi pensez-vous?* what are you thinking of? *de quoi vous plaignez-vous?* what do you complain of? *on ne sait pas avec quoi il fait son élixir*, it is not known what his elixir is made of. *Que* is sometimes used instead of *de quoi*, *à quoi*: *que (de quoi) sert à l'aveugle d'avoir des lunettes?* of what use are spectacles to the blind? *que (à quoi) sert la science sans la vertu?* what avails learning without virtue?

Que is used before a substantive complement, *quoi* before an adjective complement, in elliptical sentences when the verb is understood: *O ambition! que de crimes fais-tu commettre à l'homme!* oh! ambition, what crimes causest thou man to commit! *quoi de plus odieux que le mensonge?* what more hateful than lying (what can be more hateful than a lie)? An infinitive following the adjective complement of *quoi*, takes the preposition *de* before it: *quoi de plus aimable que la vertu?* what (is, can be) more amiable than virtue? *quoi de plus amusant que de lire Don Quixote?* what (is, can be) more amusing than to read Don Quixote? But when the verb is expressed, *que* is used instead of *quoi*: *que peut-on voir de plus beau que ce tableau?* what more beautiful can one see than this

picture (can there be seen anything more beautiful than this picture)?

Quoi is used without a preposition in, *il (elle) a un certain je ne sais quoi*, he (she) has a certain indefinable something (there is a certain indefinable something about him (her)); and in analogous sentences. It is used sometimes, also, in the same way as the English *what! how!* in exclamations preceding a question: *quoi! vous osez me dire cela en face!* what! you dare tell me so to my face!

With regard to interrogative sentences in general, we may here incidentally remark, that when the subject of an interrogative sentence is a substantive, this is either placed at the head of the sentence, the pronoun being put after the verb—*votre frère vous a-t-il donné de l'argent?* has your brother given you money?—or the interrogative form *est-ce que?* is it that? is prefixed to it, and the pronoun omitted: *est-ce que votre frère vous a donné de l'argent?* When the subject is a personal pronoun, the question may equally be asked by the form *est-ce que*:—*finirez-vous ce soir?* *est-ce que vous finirez ce soir?* In interrogative sentences with *qui* and *que* the form *est-ce* (*qui est-ce qui?* who is it who? *qui est-ce que?* who is it whom? *qu'est-ce qui?* what is it that? [subject], *qu'est-ce que?* what is it that? [direct complement]) is extensively used in conversational language. When the questioner is desirous of obtaining some account or explanation regarding the person or thing forming the subject of the question, the forms *qu'est-ce que?* what is it that? or *qu'est-ce que c'est que?* what is it that it is that? are resorted to: *qu'est-ce qu'un Jésuite?* what is a Jesuit? *qu'est-ce que c'est que l'instinct?* what is instinct?

Additional Observations on the use of the Pronouns in general.

I. The pronoun cannot correctly be used in French to represent a common noun taken in an indeterminate sense; that is, not being preceded by either the article or one of the determinative adjectives. It is accordingly incorrect to say, for instance, *je vous fais grâce, et j'espère que vous la mériterez*, I grant you forgiveness, and I hope you will merit it; *il lui a fait peur*, de laquelle *il ne s'est pas encore remis*, he has frightened him (put him in terror), from which he has not yet recovered (and he has not yet recovered from it); *il nous a reçus avec politesse qui nous a charmés*, he has received us with politeness which has enchanted us. To make these phrases

grammatically correct, the article, or one of the determinative adjectives, must be prefixed to the noun to which the pronoun refers; and, if necessary, their construction must be altered so as to admit of this: *je vous accorde votre grâce, et j'espère, &c.*, I grant *your* pardon, and I hope, &c.; *il lui a fait une peur terrible, de laquelle, &c.*, he has given him *a* terrible fright from which, &c.; *il nous a reçus avec une politesse qui nous a charmés*, he has received us with *a* politeness, &c. In the same way, *être en santé* may be replaced in similar phrases by *jouir de la santé, &c.* In cases where the genius of the language opposes the article or determinative adjective being prefixed to the noun, a different turn must be given to the sentence; e.g., *quand nous mîmes en mer, elle était paisible*, when we put to sea, it (the sea) was calm. To say *en la mer*, would be contrary to the genius of the French language; we give, therefore, here a different turn to the phrase, and say: *quand nous nous embarquâmes, la mer était paisible*, the sea was calm when we embarked.

II. A pronoun should never be repeated in a sentence, as the representative of another object than that to which it refers in the first instance. Hence it is incorrect to say, for instance, *George ne put rien refuser à Jacques, il lui envoya donc le cheval qu'il lui avait fait demander*, George could not refuse James anything, he sent *him* therefore the horse which he had asked *him* for; the first *il* refers to George, the first *lui* to Jacques, the second *il* to Jacques, the second *lui* to George; *la politesse exige qu' on prête attention à ce qu' on nous dit*, politeness demands that *one* should listen to what *one* says to us (politeness demands that we should listen to what is said to us); the first *on* here represents *nous* (ourselves), the second stands for *le monde, les autres*; *j'ai lu avec plaisir cet ouvrage, qui a été composé par une personne, qui est versée dans les sciences qui ont pour objet l'étude de la nature*, I have read with pleasure this work *which* has been composed by a person *who* is versed in the sciences, *which* have for their object the study of nature (I have read with pleasure this work, written—which has been written—by a person well versed in the sciences, having for their object the study of nature); the first *qui* here relates to *ouvrage*, the second to *personne*, the third to *sciences*. To render these sentences correct, the number of pronouns must be diminished, or an equivalent pronoun of a different class must be substituted for one of them: *George ne pouvant rien refuser à Jacques, envoya à celui-ci le cheval qu'il lui (envoya à ce dernier le cheval que celui-ci lui) avait fait demander; la*

politesse exige que nous prêtions attention à ce qu'on nous dit ; j'ai lu avec plaisir cet ouvrage composé par une personne versée dans les sciences qui ont pour objet l'étude de la nature.

III. A pronoun should never be used in a way to admit of an ambiguous construction. Hence do not say, for instance, *Virgile a imité Homère dans tout ce qu'il a de beau*, because the *il* may apply here equally to Virgil and to Homer ; but say, *Virgile a imité Homère dans tout ce que celui-ci a de beau*, Virgil has imitated Homer in all the beauties of the latter ; or, *Virgile dans tout ce qu'il a de beau, a imité Homère*, Virgil in all his beauties, has imitated Homer.

IV. With regard to the agreement of the pronoun with the noun or nouns substantive to which it refers, the same rules hold good which have been laid down for the agreement of the qualificative adjective with the noun or nouns qualified by the latter (see p. 55).

Complement (Regimen) of the Pronouns.

The pronoun being the representative of the substantive, may, of course, like the latter, be accompanied by a complement. This complement consists of the preposition *de*, followed either by a substantive, or by another pronoun, or by an infinitive : *il a acheté les chevaux de mon père et ceux de mon frère*, he has bought the horses of my father and those of my brother ; *chacun de vous recevra deux francs par jour*, every one of you will receive two francs a day ; *le désir de voyager et celui de revoir son frère le déterminèrent de se rendre en France*, the desire to travel, and that of seeing his brother again, induced him to go to France.

CHAPTER V.

THE VERB.

Introductory Remarks.

I. THE French verbs may be divided :—

a. Into *abstract* and *concrete* verbs. Properly speaking, there is but one *abstract* verb, viz., *être*, to be, which is termed also the *substantive* verb; however, the verbs *avoir*, to have, and *devenir*, to become, to grow, partake also in some respects of the nature of *être*, and may accordingly be ranked in some measure with the latter as *abstract* verbs. All other verbs are called *concrete* or *adjective* verbs, formed, in fact, by the combination of the *substantive* verb *être* with an adjective: thus, *parler*, to speak, is formed of *être* and the adjective *parlant*, speaking (*to be speaking*); *je vois*, I see, of *je suis*, I am, and *voyant*, seeing (I am seeing—infinite, *to be seeing*, to see); *vous dites*, you say, of *vous êtes*, you are, and *disant*, saying (you are saying—infinite, *to be saying*, to say), &c.

b. Into *transitive* and *intransitive* verbs. The former express an action emanating from the *subject* or *agent*, and bearing *directly* upon another person or thing, which is called the *direct complement* of the verb, because it serves to *complete* the *signification* of the verb; or, in other words, the *idea* enunciated or conveyed by it; it is called *direct*, because it completes the signification of the verb without the aid and intervention of a preposition: *le père aime ses enfants*, the father loves his children; *ses enfants* is here the direct complement of *aime* (*est aimant*); *je chéris la gloire*, I love glory; *la gloire* is here the direct complement of *chéris* (*suis chérissant*). The *intransitive* verbs, which are termed also *neuter* verbs, express either a *state* or *condition* of the subject, or an *action confined to the agent*; or, finally, an action emanating from the *subject*, or *agent*, and bearing *indirectly* upon another person or thing, which is called the *indirect complement* of the verb; it is termed *indirect*, because it requires the aid of a preposition (*de, à, pour, avec, sans, &c.*) to join it to the verb: *il parle à votre sœur*, he

speaks to your sister; *à votre sœur* is here the indirect complement of *parle* (*est parlant*). The term *indirect complement* is, however, bestowed also upon the prepositive complements of those intransitive verbs which express a state or condition of the subject, or an action confined to the agent. The *transitive* verbs may, besides the *direct* complement, have also an *indirect* complement: *le père a donné le livre à son fils*; *le livre* is here the *direct*, *à son fils* the *indirect* complement of *a donné* (*a été donnant*).

REMARK.—The conjunctive pronouns *lui, leur, dont, en, y*, are *indirect* complements, on account of the preposition which they enclose within them (*lui—à lui, leur—à eux, dont—duquel (de lequel), en—de cela, y—à cela*). The conjunctive pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous*, may be either *direct* or *indirect* complements; they are *direct* complements when they stand for the absolute forms, *moi, toi, lui, nous, vous*: *il m'aime*, i.e., *il aime moi*, he loves me; *je t'appelle*, i.e., *j'appelle toi*, I call thee, &c.; they are *indirect* complements when they stand for *à moi, à toi, à lui, à nous, à vous*: *mon père m'a donné un livre*, i.e., *mon père a donné un livre à moi*, my father has given me a book (given a book to me); *je vous répons*, i.e., *je répons à vous*, I answer you (I reply to you), &c.

II. As in most other languages, so also in French, verbs are sometimes both *transitive* and *intransitive*: *il casse la corde*, he breaks the string; *la corde casse*, the string breaks.

III. The *transitive* verbs alone are susceptible of forming the *passive* voice. There are a few transitives, as *avoir*, to have, *épouser*, to espouse, to marry, which are not used in the *passive* voice.

IV. The *pronominal* or *reflexive* verbs are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person; as, *je me, tu te, il se, nous nous, vous vous, ils se*. Some of the *pronominal* verbs are *essentially* pronominal; i.e., they are never used without two pronouns. The second pronoun of an essentially pronominal verb forms always the direct complement of the latter: *s'abstenir*; *je m'abstiens*, I abstain, refrain (I withhold *myself* from). The verb *s'arroger*, to arrogate to one's self, forms the only exception from this rule.

V. *Personal* verbs are those which are conjugated throughout (in their personal modes) with the three grammatical persons. *Impersonal*, or, more correctly speaking, *unipersonal* verbs, are those which are only used in the third person singular, in conjunction with the vague and indefinite word *il*, it: *il faut*, *il y a*, *il importe*, &c. The word *il* here is not the *actual* subject of the verb however, but it simply represents and announces that subject which follows in the form of a complement: *il est nécessaire d'étudier*, it is necessary to study (*étudier est*

nécessaire, to study is necessary,—*étudier* is here the actual subject). True, in *il neige*, it snows; *il pleut*, it rains; *il tonne*, it thunders, the actual subject is not expressed after the verb; but then, at all events, it is present to the mind.

REMARK.—*Neuter* and *pronominal* verbs, and the *passive* voice of *transitives* are sometimes accidentally employed as *unipersonal* verbs: *il tombe de la pluie*, it rains; *il vint un homme*, there came a man; *il se présente une difficulté*, a difficulty presents itself; *il a été pris des mesures*, measures have been taken.

SECT. I.—Conjugation of the Verbs.

Introductory Remarks.

I. The French verbs have, like the English, five *modes* or *moods*, viz., the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *conditional*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*. But whereas the English verbs have only *two* simple tenses, viz., the *present* and *imperfect*, the French verbs have *four*: the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterite definite* or *perfect*, and the *first* (*simple* or *absolute*) *future*.

II. The past tenses: the *preterite indefinite* or *compound perfect*, the *preterite anterior* or *paulo-ante pluperfect*, and the *pluperfect*; and the *future perfect* (*future past* or *exact future*); and also the *conditional past*, are formed by the conjunction of the *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect* (*preterite definite*), *compound perfect* (*preterite indefinite**), *simple future*, and *conditional present* of one of the *auxiliary* verbs *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, with the participle past of the verb.

NOTE A.—With the auxiliary verb *avoir* are conjugated --

a. All *transitive* verbs.

b. Most *intransitive* verbs expressing an action. Exceptions: *aller*, *arriver*, *choir*, *décéder*, *éclore*, *mourir*, *naître*, *tomber*, *venir*, and its compounds, *devenir*, *intervenir*, *parvenir*, *provenir*, *revenir*, *survenir*, which are conjugated with *être*.

c. Certain *unipersonal* verbs: *il a fallu*, *il a importé*, *il a tonné*, &c.

NOTE B.—With the auxiliary verb *être* are conjugated—

a. All *pronominal* or *reflexive* verbs.

b. The greater number of *unipersonal* verbs: *il est arrivé des événements*, *il est résulté*, &c.

NOTE C.—Some *intransitive* verbs, as *accourir*, *cesser*, *croître*, *déchoir*, *dégénérer*, *descendre*, *disparaître*, *échapper*, *échoir*, *empirer*, *entrer*, *grandir*, *monter*, *partir*, *passer*, *rester*, *sortir*, *vieillir*, &c., are conjugated with *avoir*, when it is the *action* or *fact*, with *être*, when it is the *state* or *condition* expressed by the verb which is uppermost in the mind: *elle a disparu*

* The compound past tense formed of the *preterite indefinite* of an auxiliary, and the participle past of the verb, is rarely used.

subitement, she has suddenly disappeared; *elle est disparue depuis deux ans* (literally, she is disappeared since two years), she disappeared two years ago, and has not been heard of since; *la fièvre a cessé hier*, the fever ceased (has ceased) yesterday; *la fièvre est cessée depuis quelque temps* (literally, the fever is ceased since some time), the fever has been gone for some time past; *la rivière a monté rapidement*, the river has rapidly risen; *il est monté*, he is gone up; *tandis qu'on le cherchait à Milan, il avait passé en Suisse*, whilst they were searching for him in Milan, he had passed into Switzerland; *les chaleurs sont passées*, the hot weather is gone, &c.

REMARK.—Some of these intransitives are sometimes used in an (apparently) transitive capacity; that is, they are accompanied by a direct complement, in which case they take always the verb *avoir* as auxiliary: *il a passé la nuit sans dormir*, he has passed a sleepless night; *il a monté l'escalier*, he has mounted (ascended) the staircase; *on l'a sorti d'une affaire désagréable*, they have got him out of a disagreeable fix.

NOTE D.—Some intransitives are conjugated either with *avoir*, or with *être*, according to the different acceptation in which they happen to be used. Thus, *convenir*, in the sense of *to suit*, *to become*, *to be proper*, takes *avoir*; whilst in the sense of *to agree*, *to confess*, it is conjugated with *être*: *la place lui aurait convenu sans doute, si seulement il était convenu du salaire*, the place would have suited him well enough, if only he had agreed to the salary. *Demeurer*, in the sense of *to remain*, *to be left*, takes *être*: *plus de trois mille hommes sont demeurés sur le champ de bataille*, more than three thousand men remained (have remained, were left) on the battle-field (on the ground); in the sense of *to stay*, *to reside*, *to sojourn*, it is conjugated with *avoir*: *il a demeuré dix ans à Londres*, he has resided ten years in London.

Rester, in the sense of *to stop*, *to sojourn*, takes *avoir*: *il a resté deux jours à Calais*, he stopped (has stopped) two days at Calais; in any other acceptation it is conjugated with *être*: *il est resté tout interdit*, he remained (was, stood) quite amazed (confused), &c.

Expirer, to expire, is said both of persons and of things; of persons it is used in the sense of *mourir*, to die, and is conjugated with *avoir*: *il a expiré dans mes bras*, he (has) died (expired) in my arms. Of things it is used in the sense of *to come to an end*, *to be at an end*, *to run out*, and takes *avoir* to mark the action or fact: *son bail a expiré hier*, his lease has expired yesterday; *être* to mark the state: *la trêve est expirée*, the truce has expired (the truce is at an end).

We say, *cette faute m'est échappée*, this fault is a slip of mine; *cette faute m'a échappé*, this fault has escaped my attention (scrutiny).

III. The *passive voice* is formed by the conjunction of the verb *être*, throughout all its modes and tenses, with the participle past of the verb.

THE AUXILIARIES.

1. AVOIR, *To have*.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

j'ai, I have.
tu as.
il (elle, on) a.
nous avons.
vous avez.
ils (elles) ont.

IMPERFECT.

j'avais, I had, I was having.
tu avais.
il (elle, on) avait.
nous avions.
vous aviez.
ils (elles) avaient.

PRETERITE DEFINITE, or PERFECT.

j'eus, I had.
tu eus.
il (elle, on) eut.
nous eûmes.
vous eûtes.
ils (elles) eurent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE or
COMPOUND PERFECT.

j'ai eu, I have had.
tu as eu.
il (elle, on) a eu.
nous avons eu.
vous avez eu.
ils (elles) ont eu.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR, or PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

j'eus eu, I had had.
tu eus eu.
il (elle, on) eut eu.
nous eûmes eu.
vous eûtes eu.
ils (elles) eurent eu.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais eu, I had had.
tu avais eu.
il (elle, on) avait eu.
nous avions eu.
vous aviez eu.
ils (elles) avaient eu.

FIRST FUTURE.

j'aurai, I shall or will have.
tu auras.
il (elle, on) aura.
nous aurons.
vous aurez.
ils (elles) auront.

SECOND FUTURE.

j'aurai eu, I shall or will have had.
tu auras eu.
il (elle, on) aura eu.
nous aurons eu.
vous aurez eu.
ils (elles) auront eu.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT (FIRST CONDITIONAL).

j'aurais, I should or would have.
tu aurais.
il (elle, on) aurait.
nous aurions.
vous auriez.
ils (elles) auraient.

PAST (SECOND CONDITIONAL).

j'aurais eu, I should or would have had.
tu aurais eu.
il (elle, on) aurait eu.
nous aurions eu.
vous auriez eu.
ils (elles) auraient eu.

* *Avoir* is auxiliary only when accompanied by the participle past of another verb. In all other cases it is an independent transitive verb, and corresponds to the English *to have*, *to possess*.

Or, also,
j'eusse eu
tu eusses eu
il (elle, on) eût eu

nous eussions eu
vous eussiez eu
ils (elles) eussent eu.

IMPERATIVE MODE.*

Singular. *aie*, have thou, do thou have.
 Plural. *ayons*, let us have.
ayez, have ye or you, do ye have.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

que j'aie, that I (may) have.
que tu aies.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) ait.
que nous ayons.
que vous ayez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aient.

IMPERFECT.

que j'eusse, that I had, that I might have.
que tu eusses.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) eût.
que nous eussions.
que vous eussiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) eussent.

PERFECT.

que j'aie eu, that I (may) have had.
que tu aies eu.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) ait eu.
que nous ayons eu.
que vous ayez eu.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aient eu.

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse eu, that I had had, that I might have had.
que tu eusses eu.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) eût eu.
que nous eussions eu.
que vous eussiez eu.
qu'ils (qu'elles) eussent eu.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

avoir, to have.

PAST.

avoir eu, to have had.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

ayant, having.

PAST.

eu (eue) had.

COMPOUND PAST.

ayant eu, having had.

* A direct command, request, exhortation, advice, warning, prohibition, can be addressed properly only to the person spoken to; the French language, however, has a simple imperative form also for the *first* person plural; but for the *third* person *singular* and *plural*, the corresponding persons of the subjunctive present are had recourse to.

2. *ÊTRE*, To be.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

je suis, I am.
tu es.
il (elle, on) est.
nous sommes:
vous êtes.
ils (elles) sont.

IMPERFECT.

j'étais, I was, I was being.
tu étais.
il (elle, on) était.
nous étions.
vous étiez.
ils (elles) étaient.

PRETERITE DEFINITE OR PERFECT.

je fus, I was.
tu fus.
il (elle, on) fut.
nous fûmes.
vous fûtes.
ils (elles) furent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE OR
COMPOUND PERFECT.

j'ai été, I have been.
tu as été.
il (elle, on) a été.
nous avons été.
vous avez été.
ils (elles) ont été.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR, OR PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

j'eus été, I had been.
tu eus été.
il (elle, on) eut été.
nous eûmes été.
vous eûtes été.
ils (elles) eurent été.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais été, I had been.
tu avais été.
il (elle, on) avait été.
nous avions été.
vous aviez été.
ils (elles) avaient été.

FIRST FUTURE.

je serai, I shall or will be.
tu seras.
il (elle, on) sera.
nous serons.
vous serez.
ils (elles) seront.

SECOND FUTURE.

j'aurai été, I shall have been.
tu auras été.
il (elle, on) aura été.
nous aurons été.
vous aurez été.
ils (elles) auront été.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT (FIRST CONDITIONAL).

je serais, I should or would be.
tu serais.
il (elle, on) serait.
nous serions.
vous seriez.
ils (elles) seraient.

PAST (SECOND CONDITIONAL.)

j'aurais été, I should or would have been.
tu aurais été.
il (elle, on) aurait été.
nous aurions été.
vous auriez été.
ils (elles) auraient été.

* *Être* is auxiliary only when accompanied by the participle past of another verb.

Or, also,
j'eusse été.
tu eusses été.
il (elle, on) eût été.

nous eussions été.
vous eussiez été.
ils (elles) eussent été.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular. *sois*, be thou, do thou be.
 Plural. *soyons*, let us be.
soyez, be you or ye, do ye be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

que je sois, that I (may) be.
que tu sois.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) soit.
que nous soyons.
que vous soyez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) soient.

PERFECT.

que j'aie été, that I (may) have been.
que tu aies été.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) ait été.
que nous ayons été.
que vous ayez été.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aient été.

IMPERFECT.

que je fusse, that I were, that I might
 be.
que tu fusses.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) fût.
que nous fussions.
que vous fussiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) fussent.

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse été, that I had been, that
 I might have been.
que tu eusses été.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) eût été.
que nous eussions été.
que vous eussiez été.
qu'ils (qu'elles) eussent été.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

être, to be.

PAST.

avoir été, to have been.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

étant, being.

PAST.

été, been.

COMPOUND PAST.

ayant été, having been.

We have four conjugations in French : *—

The verbs of the *first* conjugation terminate in the infinitive in *er*.

Those of the *second* in *ir*.

* Though the *third* and *fourth* hardly deserve the name of conjugations, consisting as they do only of a small group of verbs conjugated alike.

Those of the *third* in *oir* (or rather in *evoir*—the verbs in *oir*, not preceded by *ev* being all irregular).

Those of the *fourth* in *re*.

That part of the infinitive which remains after rescinding the *termination*, is called the *root* of the verb: the last letter of the *root* is called the *characteristic* of the verb. Thus in *parl-er*, *l* is the *characteristic*; in *fin-ir*, *n*; in *recev-oir*, *v*; in *rend-re*, *d*; in *étudi-er*, *i*; in *pay-er*, *y*; in *cré-er*, *é*; in *ri-re*, *i*, &c.

In conjugating a verb, the respective terminations of the different modes, tenses, &c. (which will be found here below severally under the head of the respective conjugations), are added to the root of the verb in the simple modes, tenses, &c.; the compound modes, tenses, &c., being formed, as already stated, by the conjunction of one of the auxiliaries with the participle past of the verb.

A. First Conjugation.

The immense majority of French verbs are of the first conjugation.

The respective terminations of the first conjugation are—

Infinitive present—*er*.

Participle present—*ant*.

Participle past—*é* (feminine, *ée*; plural, masculine, *és*; feminine, *ées*).

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

Singular.

1st person.	<i>e</i> .
2nd „	<i>es</i> .
3rd „	<i>e</i> .

Plural.

1st person.	<i>ons</i> .
2nd „	<i>ez</i> .
3rd „	<i>ent</i> .

IMPERFECT.

Singular.

1st person.	<i>ais</i> .
2nd „	<i>ais</i> .
3rd „	<i>ait</i> .

Plural.

1st person.	<i>ions</i> .
2nd „	<i>iez</i> .
3rd „	<i>aient</i> .

PRETERITE DEFINITE or PERFECT.

Singular.

1st person.	<i>ai</i> .
2nd „	<i>as</i> .
3rd „	<i>a</i> .

Plural.

1st person.	<i>âmes</i> .
2nd „	<i>âtes</i> .
3rd „	<i>èrent</i> .

FIRST FUTURE.

Singular.

1st person.	<i>erai</i> .
2nd „	<i>eras</i> .
3rd „	<i>era</i> .

Plural.

1st person.	<i>erons</i> .
2nd „	<i>erez</i> .
3rd „	<i>eront</i> .

CONDITIONAL MODE.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Singular.			Plural.		
1st person.	<i>erais.</i>		1st person.	<i>erions.</i>	
2nd „	<i>erais.</i>		2nd „	<i>eriez.</i>	
3rd „	<i>erait.</i>		3rd „	<i>eraient.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>e.</i>
2nd „	<i>es.</i>
3rd „	<i>e.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>ions.</i>
2nd „	<i>iez.</i>
3rd „	<i>ent.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>asse.</i>
2nd „	<i>asses.</i>
3rd „	<i>ât.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>assions.</i>
2nd „	<i>assiez.</i>
3rd „	<i>assent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular.	<i>e (es, before y or en).</i>
1st person plural.	<i>ons.</i>
2nd „	<i>ez.</i>

AIMER, To love.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

j'aime, I love.
tu aimes.
il (elle, on) aime.
nous aimons.
vous aimez.
ils (elles) aiment.

IMPERFECT.

j'aimais, I loved, I was loving.
tu aimais.
il (elle, on) aimait.
nous aimions.
vous aimiez.
ils (elles) aimaient.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

j'aimai, I loved.
tu aimas.
il (elle, on) aimâ.
nous aimâmes.
vous aimâtes.
ils (elles) aimèrent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

j'ai aimé, I have loved.
tu as aimé.
il (elle, on) a aimé.
nous avons aimé.
vous avez aimé.
ils (elles) ont aimé.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR or PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

j'eus aimé, I had loved.
tu eus aimé.
il (elle, on) eut aimé.
nous eûmes aimé.
vous eûtes aimé.
ils (elles) eurent aimé.*

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais aimé, I had loved.
tu avais aimé.
il (elle, on) avait aimé.
nous avions aimé.
vous aviez aimé.
ils (elles) avaient aimé.

FIRST FUTURE.

j'aimerai, I shall or will love.
tu aimeras.
il (elle, on) aimera.
nous aimerons.
vous aimerez.
ils (elles) aimeront.

SECOND FUTURE.

j'aurai aimé, I shall or will have loved.
tu auras aimé.
il (elle, on) aura aimé.
nous aurons aimé.
vous aurez aimé.
ils (elles) auront aimé.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT or FIRST CONDITIONAL.

j'aimerais, I should or would love.
tu aimerais.
il (elle, on) aimerait.
nous aimerions.
vous aimeriez.
ils (elles) aimeraient.

PAST or SECOND CONDITIONAL.

j'aurais aimé, I should or would have loved.
tu aurais aimé.
il (elle, on) aurait aimé.

nous aurions aimé.
vous auriez aimé.
ils (elles) auraient aimé.

Or, also,
j'eusse aimé.
tu eusses aimé.
il (elle, on) eût aimé.
nous eussions aimé.
vous eussiez aimé.
ils (elles) eussent aimé.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular.	<i>aime (aimes)</i> love, love thou, do thou love.
1st person plural.	<i>aimons</i> , let us love.
2nd "	<i> aimez</i> , love you or ye, do you or ye love.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

que j'aime, that I (may) love.
que tu aimes.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) aime.
que nous aimions.
que vous aimiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aiment.

IMPERFECT.

que j'aimasse, that I loved, that I might love.
que tu aimasses.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) aimât.
que nous aimassions.
que vous aimassiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aimassent.

* The French language has a fourth preterite, which is very rarely used, however, and which we shall therefore omit from the paradigms of the other conjugations. It is formed of the preterite indefinite of *avoir* (or *être*) and the participle past of the verb: *j'ai eu aimé*, I have had loved, *tu as eu aimé*, *il (elle, on) a eu aimé*, *nous avons eu aimé*, *vous avez eu aimé*, *ils (elles) ont eu aimé*.

PERFECT.

que j'aie aimé, that I (may) have loved.

que tu aies aimé.

qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) ait aimé.

que nous ayons aimé.

que vous ayez aimé.

qu'ils (qu'elles) aient aimé.

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse aimé, that I had loved,
that I might have loved.

que tu eusses aimé.

qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) eût aimé.

que nous eussions aimé.

que vous eussiez aimé.

qu'ils (qu'elles) eussent aimé.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

aimer, to love.

PAST.

avoir aimé, to have loved.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

aimant, loving.

PAST.

aimé (aimée, aimés, aimées), loved.

COMPOUND PAST.

ayant aimé, having loved.

Observations.

I. The verbs in *ger*, interpose a mute *e** between the characteristic (*g*) and the terminations beginning with *a* or *o*: *mang-er* (*manger*), to eat; *nous mang-e-ons* (*mangeons*), we eat; *je mang-e-ais* (*mangeais*), I was eating; *il mang-e-a* (*mangea*), he ate, he did eat, &c.

II. The verbs in *cer*, mark the characteristic (*c*) with a cedilla* before the terminations beginning with *a* or *o*: *commenc-er* (*commencer*), to begin; *nous commenç-ons* (*commençons*), we begin; *il menaç-a* (*menaç-a*), he threatened, &c.

III. If the last syllable of the root has for its vowel an *e* marked with the acute accent (*é*), this *é* acute is changed to *è* grave before a mute syllable: *considér-er* (*considérer*), to consider; *je considèr-e* (*considère*); *je considèr-erai* (*considérerai*); *régl-er* (*régler*), to regulate, rule, &c.; *je régl-e* (*règle*); *je régl-erai* (*règlerai*), &c.

Exception.—The verbs in *éger* keep the *é* throughout the conjugation.

IV. If the last syllable of the root has for its vowel a mute *e*, followed by any other consonant, except *l* or *t*, the *e* mute of

* The mute *e* and the cedilla serve here simply to secure the soft pronunciation of the characteristics *g* and *c*, throughout the conjugation of the verb.

that final syllable of the root is changed to *è* before a mute syllable: *lev-er* (*lever*), to raise, &c.; *je lève*, I raise; *je lèverai*, I shall raise, &c.

V. The verbs in *eler* and *eter* (but not those in *éler* and *éter*—see III.), double the *characteristic* (*l* or *t*) before a mute *e*: *appel-er* (*appeler*), to call; *j'appell-e* (*appelle*); *j'appell-erai* (*appellerai*); *jet-er* (*jeter*), to throw; *il jett-e* (*jette*); *il jett-erait* (*jetterait*), &c.

REMARK.—The Academy excepts from this rule the following six verbs: *acheter*, *bourreler*, *déceler*, *geler*, *harceler*, *peler*, and instead of doubling the *characteristic*, changes the mute *e* of the last syllable of the root of these verbs to *è* before a mute syllable (in conformity with IV.). It would be difficult, however, to assign any intelligible ground for this exception, and the student had therefore better conform with respect to the six verbs here named, to the general rule on the verbs in *eler* and *eter*.

VI. The verbs in *yer*, change the *characteristic* (*y*) to *i* before a mute *e*: *ploy-er* (*ployer*), to bend; *je ploi-e* (*ploie*, instead of *ploye*); *je ploi-erai* (*ploierai*, instead of *ployerai*), &c.

REMARK.—In *grassey-er* (*grasseyer*) the *characteristic* (*y*) is usually retained throughout the conjugation. The Academy retains the *y* also throughout in all verbs ending in *ayer*—another unnecessary exception.

VII. In verbs ending in *ouer* or *uer*, a diæresis (·) is placed over the *i* of the termination of the first and second person plural of the imperfect indicative, and present subjunctive: *jou-er* (*jouer*), to play; *nous jouïons*, we played; *que vous jouïez*, that you (may) play; *tu-er* (*tuer*), to kill; *nous tuïons*, we killed; *que vous tuïez*, that you (may) kill, &c.

VIII. Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation.

1. *Aller*, to go, is irregular, ^a in the present indicative, singular, and third person, plural—*je vais*, *tu vas*, *il (elle, on) va*, *ils (elles) vont*; ^b in the corresponding persons of the present subjunctive—*que j'aïlle*, *que tu aïlles*, *qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) aïlle*; *qu'ils (qu'elles) aïllent*. ^c Future and conditional: *j'irai*, *tu iras*, *il (elle, on) ira*, *nous irons*, *vous irez*, *ils (elles) iront*; *j'irais*, *tu irais*, *il (elle, on) irait*, *nous irions*, *vous iriez*, *ils (elles) iraient*. ^d The second person singular of the imperative *va*; (before *y*, *vas*). The other parts are regular.

2. *Envoyer*, to send, is irregular in the future and conditional: *j'enverrai*, *tu enverras*, *il (elle, on) enverra*, *nous enverrons*, *vous enverrez*, *ils (elles) enverront*; *j'enverrais*, *tu*

enverrais, il (elle, on) enverrait, nous enverrions, vous enverriez, ils (elles) enverraient. The other parts are regular.

NOTE.—*Renvoyer* is conjugated like *envoyer*. The same rule applies equally to all compounds of irregular verbs, with a few *partial* exceptions.

3. *Tisser*, to weave, makes in the participle past, *tissu, tissue*.

B. Second Conjugation.

The respective terminations of the second conjugation, are :—

Infinitive present—*ir*.

Participle present—*issant*.

Participle past—*i* (feminine, *ie*; plural, masculine, *is*; feminine, *ies*).

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	
Singular.	
1st person.	<i>is.</i>
2nd „	<i>is.</i>
3rd „	<i>it.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>issons.</i>
2nd „	<i>issez.</i>
3rd „	<i>issent.</i>

IMPERFECT.	
Singular.	
1st person.	<i>issais.</i>
2nd „	<i>issais.</i>
3rd „	<i>issait.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>issions.</i>
2nd „	<i>issiez.</i>
3rd „	<i>issaient.</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE or PERFECT.	
Singular.	
1st person.	<i>is.</i>
2nd „	<i>is.</i>
3rd „	<i>it.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>imes.</i>
2nd „	<i>ites.</i>
3rd „	<i>irent.</i>

FIRST FUTURE.	
Singular.	
1st person.	<i>irai.</i>
2nd „	<i>iras.</i>
3rd „	<i>ira.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>irons.</i>
2nd „	<i>irez.</i>
3rd „	<i>iront.</i>

CONDITIONAL MODE.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>irais.</i>
2nd „	<i>irais.</i>
3rd „	<i>irait.</i>

Plural.	
1st person.	<i>irions.</i>
2nd „	<i>iriez.</i>
3rd „	<i>iraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Singular.

1st person.	<i>isse.</i>
2nd „	<i>isses.</i>
3rd „	<i>isse.</i>

Plural.

1st person.	<i>issions.</i>
2nd „	<i>issiez.</i>
3rd „	<i>issent.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Singular.

1st person.	<i>isse.</i>
2nd „	<i>isses.</i>
3rd „	<i>ît.</i>

Plural.

1st person.	<i>issions.</i>
2nd „	<i>issiez.</i>
3rd „	<i>issent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular.	<i>is.</i>
1st person plural.	<i>issons.</i>
2nd „	<i>issez.</i>

FINIR, To end, to finish.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

je finis, I end, I am ending.
tu finis.
il (elle, on) finit.
nous finissons.
vous finissez.
ils (elles) finissent.

IMPERFECT.

je finissais, I ended, I was ending.
tu finissais.
il (elle, on) finissait.
nous finissions.
vous finissiez.
ils (elles) finissaient.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

je finis, I ended.
tu finis.
il (elle, on) finit.
nous finîmes.
vous finîtes.
ils (elles) finirent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

j'ai fini, I have ended.
tu as fini.
il (elle, on) a fini.
nous avons fini.
vous avez fini.
ils (elles) ont fini.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR or PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

j'eus fini, I had ended.
tu eus fini.
il (elle, on) eut fini.
nous eûmes fini.
vous eûtes fini.
ils (elles) eurent fini.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais fini, I had ended.
tu avais fini.
il (elle, on) avait fini.
nous avions fini.
vous aviez fini.
ils (elles) avaient fini.

FIRST FUTURE.

je finirai, I shall or will end.
tu finiras.
il (elle, on) finira.
nous finirons.
vous finirez.
ils (elles) finiront.

SECOND FUTURE.

j'aurai fini, I shall or will have ended.
tu auras fini.
il (elle, on) aura fini.
nous aurons fini.
vous aurez fini.
ils (elles) auront fini.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT.

je finirais, I should or would end.
tu finirais.
il (elle, on) finirait.
nous finirions.
vous finiriez.
ils (elles) finiraient.

PAST.

j'aurais fini, I should or would have ended.
tu aurais fini.
il (elle, on) aurait fini.

nous aurions fini.
vous auriez fini.
ils (elles) auraient fini.

Or, also,
j'eusse fini.
tu eusses fini.
il (elle, on) eût fini.
nous eussions fini.
vous eussiez fini.
ils (elles) eussent fini.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular. *fini*, end, end thou, do thou end.
 1st person plural. *finissons*, let us end.
 2nd *finissez*, end, end you, do you end.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

que je finisse, that I (may) end.
que tu finisses.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) finisse.
que nous finissions.
que vous finissiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) finissent.

IMPERFECT.

que je finisse, that I ended, that I might end.
que tu finisses.
qu'il (qu'elle qu'on) finit.
que nous finissions.
que vous finissiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) finissent.

PERFECT.

que j'aie fini, that I (may) have ended.
que tu aies fini.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) ait fini.
que nous ayons fini.
que vous ayez fini.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aient fini.

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse fini, that I had ended, that I might have ended.
que tu eusses fini.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) eût fini.
que nous eussions fini.
que vous eussiez fini.
qu'ils (qu'elles) eussent fini.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
<i>finir</i> , to end.	<i>avoir fini</i> , to have ended.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
<i>finissant</i> , ending.	<i>fini</i> (<i>finie</i> , <i>finis</i> , <i>finies</i>) ended.

COMPOUND PAST.

ayant fini, having ended.

Observations.

I. The verb *bénir*, in the sense of *to bless*, *to praise*, forms its participle past in the regular way (*béni*, *bénie*); but in the sense of *to consecrate* (by a religious ceremony), it makes *béni*, *bénite* in the participle past: *de l'eau bénite*, consecrated (holy) water; *du pain béni*, consecrated bread.

II. *Hair*, to hate, retains the diæresis over the *i* throughout, except in the three persons singular present indicative (*je hais*, *tu hais*, *il (elle, on) hait*), and in the second person singular of the imperative (*hais*). In the first and second person plural of the preterite definite (*nous haïmes*, *vous haïtes*), and in the third person singular of the imperfect subjunctive (*qu'il haït*), the diæresis replaces also the circumflex accent.

III. *Fleurir*, in the figurative sense of *to flourish*, to be prosperous (said of an empire, of the arts, sciences, &c.), makes in the participle present *florissant*, and in the third person singular and plural of the imperfect indicative *florissait*, *florissaient*.

IV. Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

1. *Dormir*, *mentir*, *partir*, *se repentir*, *sentir*, *servir*, *sortir*, form the three persons singular of the present indicative, and the second person singular of the imperative by dropping the termination, and changing the characteristic respectively to *s* for the first and second person (and for the second person of the imperative), to *t* for the third person: * *je dors*, *tu dors*, *il (elle, on) dort*; *dors*, sleep, sleep thou; *je mens*, &c.; *je pars*, &c.; *je me repens*, &c.; *je sens*, &c.; *je sers*, &c.; *je sors*, &c. They drop the *iss* in the participle present, in the plural of the

* This latter part of the rule applies only to *dormir* and *servir*, *t* being the characteristic of the other five verbs of this class, and no change being accordingly required in the third person.

present indicative, in the present subjunctive, in the imperfect indicative, and in the first and second person plural of the imperative: *dormant*, instead of *dormissant*; *nous dormons*, instead of *dormissons*; *vous mentez*, instead of *mentissez*; *ils partent*, instead of *partissent*; *qu'il se repente*, instead of *repentisse*; *je sentais*, instead of *sentissais*; *nous servions*, instead of *servissions*; *sortons*, *sortez*, instead of *sortissons*, *sortissez*. The other parts are regular. *Vêtir* also is conjugated like *dormir*, &c., with the exception of the participle past, in which it makes *vêtu*, instead of *vêti*; in the first and second person singular indicative, and in the second person singular of the imperative, it retains the characteristic and adds *s*: *je vêts*, *tu vêts*; *vêts*.

2. *Acquérir* drops the *iss* in the participle present, and in the imperfect indicative: *acquérant*, instead of *acquérissant*; *j'acquérais*, instead of *j'acquérissais*. In the participle past it makes *acquis*, *acquise*; in the present indicative, *j'acquiers*, *tu acquiers*, *il (elle, on) acquiert*, *nous acquérons*, *vous acquerez*, *ils acquièrent*; subjunctive, *que j'acquière*, *que tu acquières*, *qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) acquière*, *que nous acquerions*, *que vous acqueriez*, *qu'ils (qu'elles) acquièrent*; in the preterite definite, *j'acquis*, *tu acquit*, &c.; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que j'acquisse*, &c.; in the first future, *j'acquerrai*, *tu acquerras*, &c.; in the first conditional, *j'acquerrais*, *tu acquerrais*, &c.; in the imperative, *acquiers*, *acquiere*, *acquiere thou*; *acquérons*, *let us acquire*; *acquérez*, *acquire you*, *do you acquire*. *S'enquérir*, *requérir*, *conquérir*, are conjugated like *acquérir*.

3. *Bouillir* drops the *iss* in the participle present, in the plural of the present indicative, in the present subjunctive, in the imperfect indicative, and in the first and second person plural of the imperative: *bouillant*, instead of *bouillissant*; *nous bouillons*, instead of *bouillissons*; *que je bouille*, instead of *bouillisse*; *je bouillais*, instead of *bouillissais*; *bouillons*, *bouillez*, instead of *bouillissons*, *bouillissez*. In the present singular indicative it makes *je bous*, *tu bous*, *il (elle, on) bout*; in the second person singular of the imperative, *bous*.

4. *Courir* drops the *iss* in the participle present, in the plural of the present indicative, in the present subjunctive, in the first and second person plural of the imperative, and in the imperfect indicative. It makes in the singular of the present indicative, *je cours*, *tu cours*, *il court*; in the preterite definite, *je courus*, *tu courus*, *il (elle, on) courut*, *nous courûmes*, *vous courûtes*, *ils (elles) coururent*; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je courusse*, *que tu courusses*, &c.; in the first future, *je*

courrai, &c.; in the first conditional, *je courrais*, &c.; in the second person singular of the imperative, *cours*; in the participle past, *couru*.

5. *Cueillir* drops the *iss* in the same parts as *courir* (see 4); it makes in the singular of the present, *je cueille*, *tu cueilles*, *il (elle, on) cueille*; in the second person singular of the imperative, *cueille*, *cueilles*; * in the first future, *je cueillerai*, &c.; in the first conditional, *je cueillerais*, &c. (from the old verb *cueiller*).

6. *Faillir*, to fail, drops the *iss* in the same parts as *courir* (see 4). It makes in the singular of the present indicative, *je faux*, *tu faux*, *il (elle, on) faut*; in the second person singular of the imperative, *faux*; in the first future and first conditional (both obsolete) respectively, *je faudrai*, &c., *je faudrais*, &c.

7. *Fuir* make in the participle present, *fuyant*; in the present indicative (regular), *je fuis*, *tu fuis*, *il fuit* (irregular), *nous fuyons*, *vous fuyez*, *ils fuient*; present subjunctive, *que je fuie*, *que tu fuies*, *qu'il fuie*, *que nous fuyions*, *que vous fuyiez*, *qu'ils fuient*; in the imperfect indicative, *je fuyais*, &c.; in the imperative, *fuis*, *fuyons*, *fuyez*. The other parts are regular.

8. *Gésir*, to lie, is a defective verb, used only in the participle present (*gisant*); in the third person singular, and in the plural of the present indicative (*il gît*, *ci gît*, here lies), *nous gisons*, *vous gisez*, *ils gisent*; and in the imperfect of the indicative, *je gisais*, *tu gisais*, &c.

9. *Mourir* makes in the participle present, *mourant*; in the present indicative, *je meurs*, *tu meurs*, *il meurt*, *nous mourons*, *vous mourez*, *ils meurent*; present subjunctive, *que je meure*, *que tu meures*, *qu'il meure*, *que nous mourions*, *que vous mouriez*, *qu'ils meurent*; in the imperfect indicative, *je mourais*, &c.; in the preterite definite, *je mourus*, &c. (see *courir*, 4); in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je mourusse*, &c. (see *courir*, 4); in the first future and first conditional respectively, *je mourrai*, &c., and *je mourrais*, &c.; in the imperative, *meurs*, *mourons*, *mourez*; in the participle past, *mort*, *morte*.

10. *Offrir* and *ouvrir* drop the *iss* in the same parts as *courir* (see 4). They form the singular of the present indicative, and the second person singular of the imperative, the same way as *cueillir*: *j'offre*, *tu offres*, *il offre*; *offre* (*offres* *); *j'ouvre*, *tu ouvres*, *il ouvre*; *ouvre* (*ouvres* *); in the participle past they make respectively *offert*, *offerte*, and *ouvert*, *ouverte*. The other parts are regular. *Souffrir* is conjugated like *offrir*.

* The second person singular of the imperative of *cueillir*, *assaillir*, *tresaillir*, *ouvrir*, *couvrir*, *offrir*, *souffrir*, takes an *s* after the *e* before *y* and *en*.

11. *Saillir*, to project, is used only in the participles present and past, *saillant*, *sailli*, *saillie*; and (as a *unipersonal* verb) in the following forms: *il saille*, *il saillait*, *il saillera*, *il saillera**it*, *qu'il saille*, *qu'il saillit*. *Saillir*, to gush out, is regular, but mostly used only in the third person (singular and plural). *Assaillir* and *tressaillir* drop the *iss* in the same parts as *courir* (see 4). They make in the singular of the present indicative, and in the second person singular of the imperative respectively, *j'assaille*, *tu assailles*, *il assaille*—*assaille* (*assailles* *); *je tressaille*, *tu tressailles*, *il tressaille*—*tressaille* (*tressailles* *). *Tressaillir* makes in the first future and first conditional respectively, *je tressaillirai*, &c., and *je tressaillirais*, &c.; the regular forms (*tressaillirai*, *tressaillirais*) are, however, also occasionally met with.

12. *Tenir* makes in the participle present, *tenant*; in the present indicative, *je tiens*, *tu tiens*, *il tient*, *nous tenons*, *vous tenez*, *ils tiennent*; present subjunctive, *que je tienne*, *que tu tiennes*, *qu'il tienne*, *que nous tenions*, *que vous teniez*, *qu'ils tiennent*; in the imperfect indicative, *je tenais*, &c.; in the preterite definite, *je tins*, *tu tins*, *il tint*, *nous tîmes*, *vous tîntes*, *ils tinrent*; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je tinsse*, *que tu tinsses*, *qu'il tint*, *que nous tinssions*, *que vous tinssiez*, *qu'ils tinssent*; in the first future and first conditional respectively, *je tiendrai*, &c., and *je tiendrais*, &c.; in the imperative, *tiens*, *tenons*, *tenez*; in the participle past, *tenu*.

13. *Venir* is conjugated like *tenir*.

C. Third Conjugation.

The respective terminations of the third conjugation, are:—

Infinitive present—oir, or rather, *evoir*.†

Participle present—evant.

Participle past—u, ue; plural masculine, us; feminine, ues.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Singular.		Singular.	
1st person.	ois.	1st person.	evais.
2nd „	ois.	2nd „	evais.
3rd „	oit.	3rd „	evait.
Plural.		Plural.	
1st person.	evons.	1st person.	evions.
2nd „	eviez.	2nd „	eviez.
3rd „	oivent.	3rd „	evaient.

* See footnote, page 118.

† The verbs in *oir* not preceded by *ev* are all irregular.

PRETERITE DEFINITE or PERFECT.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>us.</i>
2nd „	<i>us.</i>
3rd „	<i>ut.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>âmes.</i>
2nd „	<i>ûtes.</i>
3rd „	<i>urent.</i>

FIRST FUTURE.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>evrai.</i>
2nd „	<i>evras.</i>
3rd „	<i>evra.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>evrons.</i>
2nd „	<i>evrez.</i>
3rd „	<i>evront.</i>

CONDITIONAL MODE.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Singular.		Plural.	
1st person.	<i>evrais.</i>	1st person.	<i>evrions.</i>
2nd „	<i>evrais.</i>	2nd „	<i>evriez.</i>
3rd „	<i>evrait.</i>	3rd „	<i>evraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>oive.</i>
2nd „	<i>oives.</i>
3rd „	<i>oive.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>evions.</i>
2nd „	<i>eviez.</i>
3rd „	<i>oivent.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>usse.</i>
2nd „	<i>usses.</i>
3rd „	<i>ût.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>ussions.</i>
2nd „	<i>ussiez.</i>
3rd „	<i>ussent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular.	<i>oîs.</i>
1st person plural.	<i>evons.</i>
2nd „	<i>evéz.</i>

RECEVOIR,* To receive.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

je reçois, I receive, I am receiving.
tu reçois.
il (elle, on) reçoit.
nous recevons.
vous recevez.
ils (elles) reçoivent.

IMPERFECT.

je recevais, I received, I was receiving.
tu recevais.
il (elle, on) recevait.
nous recevions.
vous receviez.
ils (elles) recevaient.

* Observe, that by joining the *ev* to the termination *oir*, as we have done here, the characteristic of the verb is shifted; the characteristic here is *c*, not *v*.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

je reçus, I received.
tu reçus.
il (elle, on) reçut.
nous reçûmes.
vous reçûtes.
ils (elles) reçurent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

j'ai reçu, I have received.
tu as reçu.
il (elle, on) a reçu.
nous avons reçu.
vous avez reçu.
ils (elles) ont reçu.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR or PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

j'eus reçu, I had received.
tu eus reçu.
il (elle, on) eut reçu.
nous eûmes reçu.
vous eûtes reçu.
ils (elles) eurent reçu.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais reçu, I had received.
tu avais reçu.
il (elle, on) avait reçu.
nous avions reçu.
vous aviez reçu.
ils (elles) avaient reçu.

FIRST FUTURE.

je recevrai, I shall or will receive.
tu recevras.
il (elle, on) recevra.
nous recevrons.
vous recevrez.
ils (elles) recevront.

SECOND FUTURE.

j'aurai reçu, I shall or will have
 received.
tu auras reçu.
il (elle, on) aura reçu.
nous aurons reçu.
vous aurez reçu.
ils (elles) auront reçu.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT or FIRST CONDITIONAL.

je recevrais, I should or would receive.
tu recevrais.
il (elle, on) recevrait.
nous recevriions.
vous recevriez.
ils (elles) recevraient.

nous aurions reçu.
vous auriez reçu.
ils (elles) auraient reçu.

Or, also,

j'eusse reçu.
tu eusses reçu.
il (elle, on) eût reçu.
nous eussions reçu.
vous eussiez reçu.
ils (elles) eussent reçu.

PAST or SECOND CONDITIONAL.

j'aurais reçu, I should or would
 have received.
tu aurais reçu.
il (elle, on) aurait reçu.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular.

1st person plural.

2nd ,,

reçois, receive, receive thou.

recevons, let us receive.

recevez, receive, receive you.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

que je reçoive, that I (may) receive.
que tu reçoives.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) reçoive.
que nous recevions.
que vous receviez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) reçoivent.

IMPERFECT.

que je reçusse, that I received, that I might receive.
que tu reçusses.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) reçût.
que nous reçussions.
que vous reçussiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) reçussent.

PERFECT.

que j'aie reçu, that I (may) have received.
que tu aies reçu.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) ait reçu.
que nous ayons reçu.
que vous ayez reçu.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aient reçu.

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse reçu, that I had received, that I might have received.
que tu eusses reçu.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) eût reçu.
que nous eussions reçu.
que vous eussiez reçu.
qu'ils (qu'elles) eussent reçu.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

recevoir, to receive.

PAST.

avoir reçu, to have received.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

recevant, receiving.

PAST.

reçu (reçue, reçus, reçues) received.

COMPOUND PAST.

ayant reçu, having received.

Observations.

I. The small group of verbs that figures as the third conjugation, numbers only the following seven : *devoir*, *redevoir*, *apercevoir*, *concevoir*, *décevoir*, *percevoir*, *recevoir*.

II. By including the letters *ev* in the termination, the root of *devoir* is reduced to a single letter (*d*), to which the respective terminations of the various modes, tenses, &c., are added : *d-evoir*, *je d-ois*, *nous d-ûmes*, *il d-evra*, &c. The participle past of *devoir* and *redevoir*, take an accent circumflex on the *u* in the masculine singular : *dû*, *redû*.

III. By including the letters *ev* in the termination, the letter *c* becomes the characteristic of *apercevoir*, *concevoir*, *décevoir*, *percevoir*, and *recevoir*; this letter is marked with a cedilla before *o* and *u* : *je perçois*; *conçu*.

IV. *Irregular Verbs in oir.*

1. *Choir*, to fall, is a defective verb; the participle past (*chu*, *chue*) is the only part which is still occasionally met with.

2. *Déchoir*, to decay, to fall off, lacks the participle present and the imperfect indicative; it makes in the present indicative, *je déchois*, *tu déchois*, *il déchoit*, *nous déchoyons*, *vous déchoyez*, *ils déchoient*; present subjunctive, *que je déchoie*, *que tu déchoies*, *qu'il déchoie*, *que nous déchoyions*, *que vous déchoyiez*, *qu'ils déchoient*; in the preterite definite, *je déchus*, &c. (like *reçus*); in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je déchusse*, &c. (like *que je reçusse*); in the first future and first conditional respectively, *je décherrai*, &c., and *je décherrais*, &c.; in the imperative, *déchois*, *déchoyons*, *déchoyez*; in the participle past, *déchu*, *déchue*.

3. *Échoir*, to fall out, to expire, to happen, to fall to the possession of, makes in the participle present, *échéant*; in the participle past, *échu*, *échue*; the only other parts in use are: the third person singular and plural present indicative (*il échoit*, or *il échet*; *ils écheient*, or *ils échéent*); the third person singular of the imperfect indicative, and of the preterite definite (*il échoyait*, *il échut*); the third person singular of the present subjunctive, and of the imperfect subjunctive (*qu'il échoie*, *qu'il échût*); the third person singular of the first future and of the first conditional (*il écherra*, *il écherrait*).

4. *Falloir*, to be needful, to be necessary (to *must*), is a unipersonal verb; it lacks the participle present.

PARTICIPLE PAST—*fallu*.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT—*il faut*.IMPERFECT—*il fallait*.PRETERITE DEFINITE—*il fallut*.FIRST FUTURE—*il faudra*.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

FIRST CONDITIONAL—*il faudrait*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE—*qu'il faille*.IMPERFECT—*qu'il fallût*.

5. *Mouvoir*, to move, makes in the participle present, *mouvant*; in the participle past, *mû*; in the present indicative, *je meus*, *tu meus*, *il meut*, *nous mouvons*, *vous mouvez*, *ils meuvent*; present subjunctive, *que je meuve*, *que tu meuves*, *qu'il meuve*, *que nous mouvions*, *que vous moviez*, *qu'ils meuvent*; imperfect

indicative, *je mouvais*, &c.; preterite definite, *je mus*, &c. (like *reçus*): imperfect subjunctive, *que je musse*, &c. (like *que je reçusse*); first future, *je mourrai*, &c.; first conditional, *je mourrais*, &c.; imperative, *meus, mourons, mouvez*.

6. *Pleuvoir*, to rain, is a unipersonal verb; it makes in the participle present, *pleuvant*; participle past, *plu*; present indicative, *il pleut*; subjunctive, *qu'il pleuve*; imperfect indicative, *il pleuvait*; preterite definite, *il plut*; imperfect subjunctive, *qu'il plût*; first future, *il pleuvra*; first conditional, *il pleuvrait*.

7. *Pourvoir*, to provide, makes in the participle present, *pourvoyant*; participle past, *pourvu*; present indicative, *je pourvois, tu pourvois, il pourvoit, nous pourvoyons, vous pourvoyez, ils pourvoient*; present subjunctive, *que je pourvoie, que tu pourvoies, qu'il pourvoie, que nous pourvoyions, que vous pourvoyiez, qu'ils pourvoient*; imperfect indicative, *je pourvoyais*, &c.; preterite definite, *je pourvus*, &c. (like *reçus*); imperfect subjunctive, *que je pourvusse*, &c. (like *reçusse*); first future, *je pourvoirai*, &c.; first conditional, *je pourvoirais*, &c.; imperative, *pourvois, pourvoyons, pourvoyez*.

8. *Pouvoir*, to be able (to can), makes in the participle present, *pouvant*; participle past, *pu*; present indicative, *je peux*, or *je puis* (interrogatively the latter form is used exclusively), *tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent*; present subjunctive, *que je puisse*, &c.; imperfect indicative, *je pouvais*, &c.; preterite definite, *je pus*, &c. (like *reçus*); imperfect subjunctive, *que je pusse*, &c. (like *reçusse*): first future, *je pourrai, tu pourras*, &c.; first conditional, *je pourrais, tu pourrais*, &c. *Pouvoir* has, of course, no imperative, but it has an optative: *puissé-je*, would I might, would I could, oh, that I could; *puisses-tu, puisse-t-il, puissions-nous, puissiez-vous, puissent-ils*.

9. *Savoir*, to know, makes in the participle present, *sachant*; participle past *su*; present indicative, *je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent*; present subjunctive, *que je sache*, &c.; imperfect indicative, *je savais*, &c.; preterite definite, *je sus*, &c. (like *reçus*); imperfect subjunctive, *que je susse*, &c. (like *reçusse*); first future, *je saurai, tu sauras*, &c.; first conditional, *je saurais, tu saurais*, &c.; imperative, *sache, sachez*.

10. ^a *Seoir*, to become, to befit, to fit, is used only in the participle present, *séyant*; and in the third person singular and plural of the present indicative, *il sied, ils siéent*; third person of the present subjunctive, *qu'il siée*—rarely used;

third person singular of the imperfect indicative, *il séyait*; third person singular of the first future and first conditional *il siéra, il siérait*. ^b *Seoir*, to sit, is used in the participle present and participle past, *séant, sis*. ^c *Asseoir*, to set, to fix, makes in the participle present, *asseyant* (and also *assoyant*); participle past, *assis, assise*: present indicative, *j'assieds, tu assieds, il assied, nous asseyons, vous asseyez, ils asseient* (and also *j'assois, tu assois, il assoit, nous assoyons, vous assoyez, ils assoient*); present subjunctive, *que j'asseie, que tu asseies, qu'il asseie, que nous asseyions, que vous asseyiez, qu'ils asseient* (and also *que j'assoie, que tu assoies, &c.*); imperfect indicative, *j'asseyais, &c.* (and also *j'assoyais, &c.*); preterite definite, *j'assis, &c.* (like *finis*, preterite definite of *finir*); imperfect subjunctive *que j'assisse, &c.* (like *finisse*, imperfect subjunctive of *finir*); first future, *j'assiérai, tu assiéras, &c.* (and also *j'asseyerai, tu asseyeras, &c.*; *j'assoirai, tu assoiras, &c.*); first conditional, *j'assiérais, tu assiérais, &c.* (and also *j'asseyerais, &c.*, *j'assoirais, &c.*); imperative, *assieds (assois), asseyons (assoyons), asseyez (assoyez)*. *Asseoir* is more frequently employed as a pronominal verb (*s'asseoir*), in the sense of *to sit down*: *je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied, &c.* (The forms *je m'assois, que je m'assoie, je m'assoyais, je m'assoirai, je m'assoirais, assois-toi, assoyons-nous, assoyez-vous*, are hardly ever met with.) ^d *Surseoir*, to put off, to supersede, makes in the participle past *sursis*; and in the first future and first conditional respectively, *je surseoirai, tu surseoiras, &c.*; *je surseoirais, tu surseoirais, &c.* In all other respects it is conjugated like *voir* (see 12).

11. *Valoir*, to be worth, makes in the participle present, *valant*; participle past *valu, value*; present indicative, *je vau, tu vau, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent*; present subjunctive, *que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils valient*; imperfect indicative, *je valais, &c.*; preterite definite, *je valus, &c.* (like *reçus*); imperfect subjunctive, *que je valusse, &c.* (like *reçusse*); first future, *je vaudrai, tu vaudras, &c.*; first conditional, *je vaudrais, tu vaudrais, &c.* *Valoir* has no imperative.* The compounds of *valoir* are conjugated the same way; *prévaloir*, however makes in the present subjunctive, *que je prévale, que tu prévalues, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent*—instead of *prévaille, es, e, ent*.

12. *Voir*, to see, makes in the participle present, *voyant*; participle past, *vu, vue*; present indicative, *je vois, tu vois, il*

* Some grammarians assign to *valoir* an imperative mode: *vau, valons, valez*.

voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient; present subjunctive, *que je voie, que tu vois, qu'il voie, que nous voyions, que vous voyiez, qu'ils voient*; imperfect indicative, *je voyais, &c.*; preterite definite, *je vis, &c.* (like *je finis*—preterite definite of *finir*); imperfect subjunctive, *que je visse, &c.* (like *que je finisse*—imperfect subjunctive of *finir*); first future, *je verrai, tu verras, &c.*; first conditional, *je verrais, tu verrais, &c.*; imperative, *vois, voyons, voyez*. The compounds of *voir* (with the exception of *pouvoir*—see 7.), are conjugated the same way; *prévoir*, however, makes in the first future and first conditional respectively, *je prévoirai, &c.*, and *je prévoirais, &c.*, instead of *préverrai, préverrais*.

13. *Vouloir*, to be willing (to *will*), makes in the participle present, *voulant*; participle past, *voulu, voulue*; present indicative, *je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent*; present subjunctive, *que je veuille, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille, que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent*; imperfect indicative, *je voulais, &c.*; preterite definite, *je voulus, &c.* (like *je reçus*); imperfect subjunctive, *que je voulusse, &c.* (like *que je reçusse*); first future, *je voudrai, tu voudras, &c.*; first conditional, *je voudrais, tu voudrais, &c.* *Vouloir* has no imperative; still the forms *veuille, veuillons, veuillez*, are sometimes met with; more particularly the latter, in the sense of *be so good, have the kindness, please*.

D. Fourth Conjugation.

The respective terminations of the fourth conjugation, are—
Infinitive present—*re*.

Participle present—*ant*.

Participle past—*u* (feminine, *ue*; plural masculine, *us*; feminine, *ues*).

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
Singular.			Singular.		
1st person.	s.		1st person.	<i>ais.</i>	
2nd „	s.		2nd „	<i>ais.</i>	
3rd „	t.		3rd „	<i>ait.</i>	
Plural.			Plural.		
1st person.	<i>ons.</i>		1st person.	<i>ions.</i>	
2nd „	<i>ez.</i>		2nd „	<i>iez.</i>	
3rd „	<i>ent.</i>		3rd „	<i>aient.</i>	

PRETERITE DEFINITE or PERFECT.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>is.</i>
2nd „	<i>is.</i>
3rd „	<i>it.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>îmes.</i>
2nd „	<i>îtes.</i>
3rd „	<i>irent.</i>

FIRST FUTURE.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>rai.</i>
2nd „	<i>ras.</i>
3rd „	<i>ra.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>rons.</i>
2nd „	<i>rez.</i>
3rd „	<i>ront.</i>

CONDITIONAL MODE.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Singular.		Plural.	
1st person.	<i>rais.</i>	1st person.	<i>riens.</i>
2nd „	<i>rais.</i>	2nd „	<i>riez.</i>
3rd „	<i>rait.</i>	3rd „	<i>raient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>e.</i>
2nd „	<i>es.</i>
3rd „	<i>e.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>ions.</i>
2nd „	<i>iez.</i>
3rd „	<i>ent.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Singular.	
1st person.	<i>isse.</i>
2nd „	<i>isses.</i>
3rd „	<i>ît.</i>
Plural.	
1st person.	<i>issions.</i>
2nd „	<i>issiez.</i>
3rd „	<i>issent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular.	<i>s.</i>
1st person plural.	<i>ons.</i>
2nd „	<i>ez.</i>

RENDRE, To render, to restore, to deliver.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

je rends, I render, I am rendering.
tu rends.
il (elle, on) rend (not rendt, see Obs. I.)
nous rendons.
vous rendez.
ils (elles) rendent.

IMPERFECT.

je rendais, I rendered, I was rendering.
tu rendais.
il (elle, on) rendait.
nous rendions.
vous rendiez.
ils (elles) rendaient.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

je rendis, I rendered.
tu rendis.
il (elle, on) rendit.
nous rendîmes.
vous rendîtes.
ils (elles) rendirent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

j'ai rendu, I have rendered.
tu as rendu.
il (elle, on) a rendu.
nous avons rendu.
vous avez rendu.
ils (elles) ont rendu.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR, or PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

j'eus rendu, I had rendered.
tu eus rendu.
il (elle, on) eut rendu.
nous eûmes rendu.
vous eûtes rendu.
ils (elles) eurent rendu.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais rendu, I had rendered.
tu avais rendu.
il (elle, on) avait rendu.
nous avions rendu.
vous aviez rendu.
ils (elles) avaient rendu.

FIRST FUTURE.

je rendrai, I shall or will render.
tu rendras.
il (elle, on) rendra.
nous rendrons.
vous rendrez.
ils (elles) rendront.

SECOND FUTURE.

j'aurai rendu, I shall or will have rendered.
tu auras rendu.
il (elle, on) aura rendu.
nous aurons rendu.
vous aurez rendu.
ils (elles) auront rendu.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT or FIRST CONDITIONAL.

je rendrais, I should or would render.
tu rendrais.
il (elle, on) rendrait.
nous rendrions.
vous rendriez.
ils (elles) rendraient.

PAST or SECOND CONDITIONAL.

j'aurais rendu, I should or would have rendered.
tu aurais rendu.
il (elle, on) aurait rendu.

nous aurions rendu.
vous auriez rendu.
ils (elles) auraient rendu.

Or, also,

j'eusse rendu.
tu eusses rendu.
il (elle, on) eût rendu.
nous eussions rendu.
vous eussiez rendu.
ils (elles) eussent rendu.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular.	<i>rends</i> , render, render thou, do thou render.
1st person plural.	<i>rendons</i> , let us render.
2nd ,,	<i>rendez</i> , render you, do you render.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

que je rende, that I (may) render.
que tu rendes.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) rende.
que nous rendions.
que vous rendiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) rendent.

IMPERFECT.

que je rendisse, that I rendered, that
 I might render.
que tu rendisses.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) rendit.
que nous rendissions.
que vous rendissiez.
qu'ils (qu'elles) rendissent.

PERFECT.

que j'aie rendu, that I (may) have
 rendered.
que tu aies rendu.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) ait rendu.
que nous ayons rendu.
que vous ayez rendu.
qu'ils (qu'elles) aient rendu.

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse rendu, that I had rendered,
 that I might have rendered.
que tu eusses rendu.
qu'il (qu'elle, qu'on) eût rendu.
que nous eussions rendu.
que vous eussiez rendu.
qu'ils (qu'elles) eussent rendu.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

rendre, to render.

PAST.

avoir rendu, to have rendered.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

rendant, rendering.

PAST.

rendu (rendue, rendus, rendues),
 rendered.

COMPOUND PAST.

ayant rendu, having rendered.

Observations.

I. The verbs in *dre* reject the termination *t* in the third person singular present indicative: *il vend*, instead of *vendt*; *il mord*, instead of *mordt*, &c.

II. The verbs in *ttre* reject one of the two *t*'s in the singular of the present indicative, and of the imperative; in the third person singular of the present indicative the *t* of the termination likewise is rejected: *battre*—*je bats, tu bats, il bat; bats*.

III. Irregular Verbs.

1. The verbs in *âître* and *ôître* retain the accent circumflex over the *i* in the third person singular present indicative, and throughout the first future and first conditional: *paraître; il*

paraît ; *je paraîtrai*, &c. ; *je paraîtrais*, &c. These verbs drop the characteristic (*t*) in the three persons singular present indicative, and in the imperative singular : *je paraïs*, *tu paraïs*, *il paraît*,—*paraïs* ; they change the characteristic to *ss* in the participle present ; in the three persons plural of the present indicative ; in the present subjunctive ; in the imperfect indicative ; and in the plural of the imperative : *paraissant*, *nous paraissions*, *vous paraissiez*, *ils paraissent* ; *que je paraïsse*, &c. ; *je paraissais*, &c. ; *paraissions*, *paraissiez*. The participle past, preterite definite, and imperfect subjunctive, are formed by changing *aître* or *ôître* respectively, to *u*, *us*, *usse* : *paru* (*parue*) ; *je parus*, &c. ; *que je parusse*, &c. ; instead of *paraîtu*, *paraîtis*, *paraîtisse* ; *crû** (*crue*), *je crus**, &c., *que je crusse*, &c., instead of *croîtu*, *croîtis*, *croîtisse*.

In the first future and first conditional, the characteristic is retained unaltered : *je paraîtrai*, &c. ; *je croîtrai*, &c. ; *je paraîtrais*, &c. ; *je croîtrais*, &c.

• NOTES.—*a*. The verb *naitre* makes in the participle past *né* (*née*) ; in the preterite definite, *je naquis*, &c. (like *je rendis*) ; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je naquisse*, &c. (like *que je rendisse*). *Renaitre*, to be born again, has no participle past, and accordingly no compound tenses either.

b. The verb *paître*, to graze, lacks the preterite definite and the imperfect subjunctive ; but *repaitre*, to feed, to bait, has all its tenses complete, making in the preterite definite *je repus*, &c., and in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je repusse*, &c.

2. The verbs in *indre* (*aindre*, *eindre*, *oindre*) change *nd* to *gn*, in the participle present ; in the plural of the present indicative ; in the present subjunctive ; in the imperfect indicative ; in the preterite definite ; in the imperfect subjunctive ; and in the imperative plural : *joindre*, *joignant* ; *nous joignons*, *vous joignez*, *ils joignent* ; *que je joigne*, &c. ; *je joignais*, &c. ; *que je joignisse*, &c. ; *joignons*, *joignez*. The first and second person singular present indicative, and the imperative singular, are formed by changing the characteristic (*d*) to *s* : *je joins*, *tu joins* ; *joins* ; the third person singular present indicative, by changing the characteristic to *t* : *il joint* ; the participle past, likewise, by changing the characteristic to *t* : *joint* (*jointe*). In the first future and first conditional, the characteristic is retained unaltered : *je joindrai*, &c. ; *je joindrais*, &c.

NOTE.—Of the verb *poindre*, to dawn, to peep, to sting, to pierce, the only parts used, besides the infinitive, are the present and future, and even those only in the third person singular : *il point*, *il poindra*.

* The circumflex accent serves here to distinguish the participle past and preterite definite of *croître* from the participle past and preterite definite of *croire*.

3. The verbs in *aire* insert an *s* in the participle present, between the characteristic (*ai*) and the termination (*ant*): *plaire, plaisant*; the same insertion is made also in the parts derived from the participle present, viz., in the plural of the present indicative: *nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent*; in the present subjunctive, *que je plaise, &c.*; in the imperfect indicative, *je plaisais, &c.*; and in the imperative plural, *plaisons, plaisez*. The participle past, preterite definite, and imperfect subjunctive, are formed by changing *aire* respectively to *u, us, usse*: *plu, je plus, que je plusse*, instead of *plainu, plaiis, plaiisse*. The three persons singular present indicative; the imperative singular; and the first future and first conditional, are formed regularly: *je plais, tu plais, il plait; plais; je plairai, &c.; je plairais, &c.*

NOTES.—*a.* The participle past of *taire* (*tu*) is usually marked with a circumflex over the *û*, in the masculine singular: *tû* (feminine, *tue*; plural masculine, *tus*; feminine, *tues*.)

b. *Faire*, to make, to do, and its compounds (*contrefaire, défaire, &c.*), make in the participle past, *fait (faite), contrefait (contrefaite), &c.*; in the second and third person plural present indicative, *faites, font; contrefaites, contrefont, &c.*; in the second person plural of the imperative, *faites, contrefaites, &c.*; in the present subjunctive, *que je fasse, &c., que je contrefasse, &c.*; in the preterite definite, *je fis, &c., je contrefis, &c.*; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je fisse, &c., que je contrefisse, &c.* In the future and conditional, they change the characteristic (*ai*) to *e*: *je ferai, ferais;—contreferai, contreferais, &c.*, instead of *fairai, &c.* In the other parts they are conjugated like *plaire*. *Forfaire, malfaire, méfaire, parfaire*, are used only in the infinitive, and in the participle past: *forfait, malfait, méfait, parfait*.

c. *Braire*, to bray, is used only in the third person singular and plural of the present indicative, first future and first conditional: *il brait, ils braient; il braira, ils brairont; il brairait, ils brairaient*.

d. *Traire*, to milk, makes in the participle present, *trayant*; participle past, *trait*; in the plural present indicative, *nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traient*; present subjunctive, *que je traye, &c.*; imperative plural, *trayons, trayez*; imperfect indicative, *je trayais, &c.* It lacks the preterite definite, and imperfect subjunctive. In the singular of the present indicative, imperative singular, first future and first conditional, it is conjugated like *plaire*. *Attraire, abstraire, distraire, extraire, rentrer, retirer, soustraire*, are conjugated like *traire*.

4. The verbs in *uire*, insert an *s* between the characteristic (*i*) and the termination, in the participle present: *réduire, réduisant*; in the plural of the present indicative, *nous réduisons, vous réduisez, ils réduisent*; in the present subjunctive, *que je réduise, &c.*; in the imperfect indicative, *je réduisais, &c.*; in the preterite definite, *je réduisis, &c.*; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je réduisisse, &c.*; in the imperative plural, *réduisons, réduisez*. The participle past is formed in *t*: *réduit*

(*réduite*). The singular of the present indicative; the imperative singular; and the first future and first conditional, are regular: *je réduis*, &c.; *réduis*; *je réduirai*, &c.; *je réduirais*, &c.

NOTES.—*a. Bruire*, to roar, is a defective verb, having only the participle present (*bruyant*), and the third person singular and plural of the imperfect indicative (*il bruyait*, *ils bruyaient*).

b. Luire (to shine) and *reluire* (to glitter) make in the participle past *lui*, *relui*; they lack the preterite definite and the imperfect subjunctive. In all other parts they are conjugated like *réduire*.

c. Nuire, to hurt, makes in the participle past *nui*. In all other parts it is conjugated like *réduire*.

5. *a. Verbs in ire*.—*Confire*, to pickle, makes in the participle present, *confisant*; participle past, *confit* (*confite*): plural present indicative, *nous confisons*, *vous confisez*, *ils confisent*; present subjunctive, *que je confise*, &c.; imperfect indicative, *je confisais*, &c.; preterite definite, *je confis*, &c.; imperfect subjunctive, *que je confisse*, &c.; imperative plural, *confisons*, *confisez*. The singular of the present indicative, the imperative singular, and the first future and first conditional, are regular: *je confis*, &c.; *confis*; *je confirai*, &c.; *je confirais*, &c.

b. Circoncire, to circumcise, makes in the participle past, *circoncis* (*circoncise*); *suffire* makes *suffi*. In the other parts these two verbs are conjugated like *confire*.

c. Dire, to say, makes in the second person plural of the present indicative, and of the imperative, *vous dites*; *dites*; in the participle past, *dit* (*dite*). The other parts are conjugated like *confire*. *Redire* is conjugated like *dire*.

NOTE.—*Dédire*, *contredire*, *intredire*, *médire*, *prédire*, make in the second person plural of the present indicative, and of the imperative, *vous dédisez*, *contredisez*, *intredisez*, *médisez*, *prédisez*; *dédisez*, &c.; in the other parts they are conjugated like *dire*. *Maudire* makes in the participle present *maudissant*; in the plural of the present indicative, *nous maudissons*, *vous maudissez*, *ils maudissent*; in the imperative plural, *maudissons*, *maudissez*; in the present subjunctive, *que je maudisse*, &c. In the other parts it is conjugated like *dire*.

d. Lire, to read, makes in the participle past, *lu* (*lue*); in the preterite definite, *je lus*, &c.; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je lusse*, &c. In the other parts it is conjugated like *confire*.

e. Frire, to fry, makes in the participle past, *frit* (*frite*); it lacks the participle present, the plural of the present indicative, the present subjunctive, the imperfect indicative, the preterite definite, the imperfect subjunctive, and the imperative plural. These deficiencies are readily supplied, however, by the corresponding tenses, &c., of the verb *faire*, followed by the infinitive

frire: *faisant frire, je faisais frire, &c.* The singular of the present indicative, and the first future and first conditional of *frire*, are conjugated like *confire*.

f. Ecrire, to write, inserts a *v* between the characteristic and the termination in the participle present, *écrivant*; in the plural of the present indicative, *nous écrivons, vous écrivez, ils écrivent*; in the present subjunctive, *que j'écrive, &c.*; in the imperfect indicative, *j'écrivais, &c.*; in the preterite definite, *j'écrivis, &c.*; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que j'écrivisse, &c.*; in the imperative plural, *écrivons, écrivez*. The singular of the present indicative, and of the imperative, and the first future and first conditional, are formed regularly: *j'écris, &c.; écris; j'écrirai, &c.; j'écrirais, &c.* The participle past of *écrire* is *écrit (écrite)*. The compounds of *écrire* (*circoncrire, décrire, &c.*) are conjugated in the same way.

g. Rire, to laugh, makes in the participle past, *ri*; in the preterite indicative, *je ris, &c.*; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je risse, &c.* The other parts are formed regularly: *ri-ant, je ri-s, tu ri-s, &c.; que je ri-e, &c.; je ri-ais, &c.; je ri-rai, &c.; je ri-rai-s, &c.; ri-s, ri-ons, ri-ez.*

Sourire, to smile, is conjugated like *rire*.

6. *a. Absoudre*, to absolve, makes in the participle present, *absolvant*; in the participle past, *absous (absoute)*; in the present indicative, *j'absous, tu absous, il absout, nous absolvons, vous absolvez, ils absolvent*; in the present subjunctive, *que j'absolve, &c.*; in the imperfect indicative, *j'absolvais, &c.*—(*absoudre* has no preterite definite, nor imperfect subjunctive); in the imperative, *absous, absolvons, absolvez*. The first future and first conditional are formed regularly: *j'absoudrai, &c., j'absoudrais, &c.*

b. Dissoudre, to dissolve, is conjugated the same way, and lacks the same tenses, as *absoudre*.

c. Résoudre, to resolve, is conjugated like *absoudre*, but has all its tenses complete; the participle past, *résous* (no feminine), is used only in the sense of *resolved into*, or *turned into*. When employed in the sense of *to determine, to fix on*, *résoudre* makes in the participle past *résolu (résolue)*. The preterite definite of *résoudre*, is *je résolus, &c.*; the imperfect subjunctive, *que je résolusse, &c.*

7. *Boire*, to drink, makes in the participle present, *buvant*; participle past, *bu (bue)*; plural present indicative, *nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent*; present subjunctive, *que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent*; imperfect indicative, *je buvais, &c.*; preterite definite,

je bus, &c.; imperfect subjunctive, *que je busse*, &c.; imperative, *bois, buvons, buvez*. The first future and first conditional are formed regularly: *je boirai*, &c., *je boirais*, &c.

8. *a. Clore (clorre)*, to close, is a defective verb, having, beside the infinitive, only the participle past, *clos*; the singular of the present indicative, *je clos, tu clos, il clôt*; the imperative singular, *clos*; and the first future and first conditional, *je clorai*, &c., *je clorais*, &c.

b. Déclore, to disclose, to open; and *enclore*, to enclose, are conjugated the same way, and lack the same parts as *clore*.

c. Forclore, to debar, to foreclose (law-term), has, besides the infinitive, only the participle past, *forclos*.

d. Éclore, to be hatched, to blow (of flowers), is used only in the infinitive, in the participle past, *éclos (éclose)*; and in the third person singular and plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, *il éclot, ils éclosent, qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent*; and of the first future and first conditional, *il éclora, ils écloront, il éclorait, ils écloraient*. The compound tenses of *éclore* are formed with *être*.

9. *a. Conclure*, to conclude, makes in the participle past, *conclu (conclue)*; in the preterite definite, *je conclus*, &c.; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je conclusse*, &c. The other parts are formed regularly: *conclu-ant, je conclu-s, &c.; que je conclu-e, &c.; je conclu-ais, &c.; je conclu-rai, &c.; je conclu-raïs, &c.; conclu-s, conclu-ons, conclu-ez*.

b. Exclure, to exclude, is conjugated like *conclure*; it has, however, a double participle past: *exclu (exclue)*, and *exclus (excluse)*.

10. *Coudre*, to sew (see I.), changes the characteristic (*d*) to *s* in the participle present, *cousant*; participle past, *cousu, cousue*; plural of the present indicative, *nous cousons, &c.*; present subjunctive, *que je couse, &c.*; imperfect indicative, *je cousais, &c.*; preterite definite, *je cousis, &c.*; imperfect subjunctive, *que je cousisse, &c.*; imperative plural, *cousons, cousez*. It retains the characteristic unaltered, in the singular present indicative and imperative, *je couds, tu couds, il coud—couds*; and in the first future and first conditional, *je coudrai, &c., je coudrais, &c.*

11. *Croire*, to believe, changes the characteristic (*i*) to *y*, in the participle present, *croyant*; in the first and second person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, and of the imperative, *nous croyons, vous croyez, que nous croyions, que vous croyiez,—croyons, croyez*; and in the imperfect indicative, *je croyais, &c.* It makes in the participle past, *cru (crue)*; in

the preterite definite, *je crus*, &c.; and in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je crusse*, &c. The singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive; the imperative singular; and the first future and first conditional; are formed regularly: *je croi-s*, &c.; *que je croi-e*, &c.; *croi-s*; *je croi-rai*, &c.; *je croi-rai*, &c.

12. *Mettre*, to put, (see II.) makes in the participle past, *mis* (*mise*); in the preterite definite, *je mis*, &c.; and in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je misse*, &c. The other parts are formed regularly.

13. *Moudre* (see I.), to grind, changes the characteristic (*d*) to *l* in the participle present, *moulant*; participle past, *moulu*; plural of the present indicative, *nous moulons*, &c.; present subjunctive, *que je moule*, &c.; imperfect indicative, *je moulais*, &c.; plural of the imperative, *moulons*, *moulez*; and also in the preterite definite, and imperfect subjunctive, which are formed respectively in *us* and *usse*, *je moulus*, &c., *que je moulusse*, &c. The singular of the present indicative, and the first future and first conditional, are formed regularly.

14. *Prendre*, to take, makes in the participle present, *prenant*; participle past, *pris* (*prise*); plural present indicative, *nous prenons*, *vous prenez*, *ils prennent*; present subjunctive, *que je prenne*, &c.; *que nous prenions*, *que vous preniez*, *qu'ils prennent*; imperfect indicative, *je prenais*, &c.; preterite definite, *je pris*, &c.; imperfect subjunctive, *que je prisse*, &c.; imperative plural, *prenons*, *prenez*. The singular present indicative, and the first future and first conditional, are formed regularly.

15. *Suivre*, to follow, makes in the participle past, *suivi* (*suivie*); and drops the characteristic (*v*) in the singular of the present indicative, and of the imperative, *je suis*, *tu suis*, *il suit*, —*suis*. It is regular in all other respects.

16. *Vivre*, to live, makes in the participle past, *vécu* (*écue*); in the preterite definite, *je vecus*, &c.; in the imperfect subjunctive, *que je vécusse*, &c. It drops the characteristic (*v*) in the singular of the present indicative, and of the imperative, *je vis*, *tu vis*, *il vit*, —*vis*. The other parts are formed regularly.

17. *Vaincre*, to vanquish, to conquer, changes the characteristic (*c*) to *qu* in the participle present, *vainquant*; plural present indicative, *vous vainquons*, &c.; present subjunctive, *que je vainque*, &c.; imperfect indicative, *je vainquais*, &c.; preterite definite, *je vainquis*, &c.; imperfect subjunctive, *que je vainquisse*, &c.; imperative plural, *vainquons*, *vainquez*. The other parts are formed regularly, only that the third

person singular present indicative rejects the *t*: *il vainc*, instead of *vainct*.

18. *Sourdre*, to spring, to rise (of water), has, besides the infinitive, only the third person singular present, *il sourd*.

Passive Voice of Transitive Verbs.

The passive voice of a transitive verb is formed, as has been stated already, by the conjunction of the verb *être*, to be, throughout all its modes and tenses, with the participle past of the verb conjugating—which participle past agrees in gender and number with the nominative or subject of the verb: *je suis aimé* or *aimée* (according to whether the person speaking is of the male or female sex), I am loved; *tu es aimé* or *aimée*, *il (on) est aimé*, *elle est aimée*, *nous sommes aimés* or *aimées*, *vous êtes aimé* or *aimée* (singular), *vous êtes aimés* or *aimées*, *ils sont aimés*, *elles sont aimées*, &c.

Conjugation of Pronominal or Reflexive Verbs.

In conjugating a pronominal or reflexive verb, the second pronoun (pronoun regimen) is placed, in the simple tenses, before the verb; in the compound tenses, before the auxiliary. As has already been stated, the pronominal verbs are conjugated with *être*. Of course, the pronominal verbs follow the conjugation assigned to them respectively by their termination.

SE FLATTER, To flatter one's self.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

je me flatte, I flatter myself.
tu te flattes.
il (elle, on) se flatte.
nous nous flattons.
vous vous flattez.
ils (elles) se flattent.

IMPERFECT.

je me flattais, I flattered myself (I
 &c. was flattering myself).
nous nous flattions.
 &c.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

je me flattai, I flattered myself.
 &c.
nous nous flattâmes.
 &c.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE, or COMPOUND PERFECT.

je me suis flatté, or *flattée*, I have
 flattered myself.
tu t'es flatté, or *flattée*.
il (on) s'est flatté, or *elle s'est flattée*.
nous nous sommes flattés, or *flattées*.
vous vous êtes flattés, or *flattées*.
ils se sont flattés, or *elles se sont flattées*.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR or PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

je me fus flatté, or flattée, I had
&c. flattered myself.
nous nous fûmes flattés, or flattées.
&c.

PLUPERFECT.

je m'étais flatté, or flattée, I had flat-
&c. tered myself.
nous nous étions flattés, or flattées.
&c.

FIRST FUTURE.

je me flatterai, I shall or will flatter
&c. myself.
nous nous flatterons.
&c.

SECOND FUTURE.

je me serai flatté or flattée, I shall or
&c. will have flattered myself.
nous nous serons flattés or flattées.
&c.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT or FIRST CONDITIONAL.

je me flatterais, I should or would
&c. flatter myself.
nous nous flatterions, &c.

nous nous serions flattés, or flattées.
vous vous seriez flattés, or flattées.
&c.

Or, also,

PAST or SECOND CONDITIONAL.
je me serais flatté, or flattée, I should
or would have flattered myself.
&c.

je me fusse flatté, or flattée.
&c.
nous nous fussions flattés, or flattées.
&c.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2nd person singular. *flatte-toi, flatter thyself.*
1st person plural. *flattons-nous, let us flatter ourselves.*
2nd „ *flattez-vous, flatter yourself, flatter yourselves.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

que je me flatte, that I (may) flatter
&c. myself.
que nous nous flattions.
&c.

PERFECT.

que je me sois flatté, or flattée, that I
(may) have flattered myself.
&c.
que nous nous soyons flattés, or flattées.
&c.

IMPERFECT.

que je me flattasse, that I might
&c. flatter myself.
que nous nous flattassions.
&c.

PLUPERFECT.

que je me fusse flatté, or flattée, that I
&c. had flattered myself.
que nous nous fussions flattés, or
flattées.
&c.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.
se flatter, to flatter one's self.

PAST.
s'être flatté, or *flattée*; *flattés*, or *flattées*,
to have flattered one's self.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.
se flattant, flattering one's self.

PAST.
s'étant flatté, or *flattée*; *flattés*, or
flattées, having flattered one's self.

Unipersonal Verbs.

Unipersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular; they follow, of course, the conjugation assigned to them respectively by their termination.

TONNER, To thunder.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.
il tonne, it thunders.

IMPERFECT.
il tonnait, it thundered, it was
thundering.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.
il tonna, it thundered.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.
il a tonné, it has thundered.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR or PAULO-ANTE
PLUPERFECT.

il eut tonné, it had thundered.

PLUPERFECT.
il avait tonné, it had thundered.

FIRST FUTURE.
il tonnera, it will or shall thunder.

SECOND FUTURE.
il aura tonné, it will or shall have
thundered.

CONDITIONAL MODE.

PRESENT or FIRST CONDITIONAL.
il tonnerait, it would or should
thunder.

PAST or SECOND CONDITIONAL.
il aurait tonné, it would or should
have thundered.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.
qu'il onne, that it (may) thunder.

IMPERFECT.
qu'il tonnât, that it thundered (that
it might thunder).

PERFECT.
qu'il ait tonné, that it (may) have
thundered.

PLUPERFECT.
qu'il eût tonné, that it had thundered
(that it might have thundered).

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
tonner, to thunder.	avoir tonné, to have thundered.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
tonnant. thundering.	ayant tonné, having thundered.

Interrogative and Negative forms of Conjugation.

A. INTERROGATIVE FORM.

a. The personal pronoun subject is placed, in the simple tenses, after the verb; in the compound tenses, after the auxiliary; and a hyphen is put between the verb or auxiliary and the pronoun: *aimes-tu? avez-vous aimé?*

REMARKS.—^(a) When the verb ends in a vowel, a *t* placed between two hyphens is inserted as a euphonic letter between the verb and the personal pronoun of the third person (*il, elle, on*): *vous aime-t-il? vous a-t-elle aimé? finira-t-on bientôt?* ^(b) *E* mute terminating the verb is changed to *é* before the pronoun *je*: *aimé-je?* (instead of *aime-je?*) *eussé-je reçu?* (instead of *eusse-je reçu?*)

b. The form *est-ce que?* (is it that?) must be substituted for the direct interrogative form, in the first person singular of the present indicative, when that person happens to have only one syllable: *est-ce que je prends?* (not *prends-je*); *est-ce que je sers?* (not *sers-je*); *est-ce que je mens?* (not *mens-je*), &c. We may say, however, *ai-je? dis-je? dois-je? fais-je? suis-je? vais-je? vois-je?* The form *est-ce que* is preferable also in the first person singular of the present indicative of verbs of the first conjugation: *est-ce que je parle?* (better than *parlé-je?*) *est-ce que je donne?* (better than *donné-je?*) &c.

c. When the subject is a *substantive*, it is either put at the head of the sentence, with the corresponding pronoun placed after the verb or auxiliary, as the case may be: Has your brother seen him? *votre frère l'a-t-il vu?* or the form with *est-ce que* is resorted to: *est-ce que votre frère l'a vu?*

d. With respect to interrogative sentences with the pronouns absolute, *qui, que*, the student is referred to pp. 95—97.

B. NEGATIVE FORM.

The English *not* is rendered in French by *ne-pas* or *ne-point*. In the simple tenses, the *ne* is placed before the verb, or the pronoun or pronouns preceding the latter; the *pas* or *point* is placed after the verb: *je ne veux pas*; *je ne lui donnerai pas mon argent*; *il ne travaille point*. In the compound tenses, the *ne* is placed before the auxiliary or the pronoun or pronouns preceding the latter, the *pas* or *point* is placed after the auxiliary: *vous ne m'avez pas dit cela*; *il ne m'en a point parlé*.

C. NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE FORM.

In the simple tenses *ne* is put before the verb or the pronoun or pronouns preceding the latter, the personal pronoun subject is placed after the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the pronoun subject: *ne l'aime-t-elle pas comme sa sœur*? *n'avez-vous pas du pain*? In the compound tenses, *ne* is put before the auxiliary or the pronoun or pronouns preceding the latter, the personal pronoun subject is placed after the auxiliary, and *pas* or *point* after the pronoun subject: *ne lui avez-vous pas donné sa démission*.

The remarks under A, apply equally in negative interrogative sentences.

Use of the Negation.

We have three degrees of negation in French: *ne*, *ne pas*, *ne point*; *ne* is the slightest, *ne point* the strongest negation; *ne pas* holds the middle between the two.

Point is used in connection with *ne*, in reference to something *permanent* and *habitual*; *pas*, in reference to something *temporary*, *transient*, *occasional*, *accidental*: *il ne lit point*, he never reads; *il ne lit pas*, he is not reading (just now).

When the sentence contains an adverb of comparison (*si*, *aussi*, *tant*, *autant*, *plus*, *moins*, &c.), or a numeral adjective, *pas* is always preferable to *point*: *son frère n'est pas aussi grand que mon cousin*; *il n'a pas perdu autant que moi*; *il ne gagne pas vingt francs par semaine*.

In interrogative negative sentences, the use of *point* serves to imply a doubt on the mind of the questioner: *n'avez-vous point dit cela*? did you not say so? (i. e., I think you said so, but I am not quite sure, and therefore address this question to you to remove my doubts on the subject;) *pas*, on the other

hand, implies a positive knowledge or conviction on the part of the questioner: *n'avez-vous pas dit cela?* did you not say so? (i. e., can you deny that you said so?)

Pas and *point* may be omitted with *oser*, *pouvoir*, *cesser*, *savoir*, used absolutely, or followed by an infinitive: *je n'ose*, *je n'ose lui dire cela*; *je ne puis*, *il ne peut marcher*; *nous ne cessons de travailler*; *il ne saurait lui pardonner*; *ne sauriez-vous y aller?*

Pas and *point* must be suppressed when the sentence contains some other negative expression, such as *jamais*, *rien*, *guère*, *nul*, *nullement*, *aucun*, *personne*, *ni-ni*, or *que* used in the sense of but: *je ne le reverrai jamais*; *elle ne m'a rien donné*; *Titus ne passait aucun jour sans faire une bonne action*; *je n'ai vu personne*; *elle n'a ni beauté ni vertu*; *je ne vois partout que misère*.

The simple negation *ne*, is used sometimes in French where it is not expressed in English, viz.:—

a. After the conjunctive locutions *à moins que* (unless), *de crainte que*, *de peur que* (lest, for fear that, for fear of); *à moins que vous ne lui parliez*, unless you speak to him; *de crainte que son père ne l'oublie*, lest his father should forget it; *de peur que sa femme ne l'ait trompé*, for fear that his wife should have deceived him.

NOTES.—1. In poetry the negation is not always used after *à moins que*: *à moins qu' à nos projets un plein effet réponde* (Corneille).

2. If the *not* is expressed in English, *ne pas* must be used after *de peur que*, &c.: *à moins que l'honneur de votre famille ne vous soit pas cher*, unless the honour of your family be not dear to you.

b. After the verbs *craindre*, *avoir peur*, *appréhender*, *trembler*, when used affirmatively: *il craint que cette malheureuse ne soit déjà partie*, he is afraid that this unfortunate one has already left: *je tremble qu'il ne soit arrivé quelque malheur*, I tremble lest some misfortune should have happened. But when the verbs *craindre*, &c., are used negatively, no negation is inserted in the dependent sentence: *il ne craint pas que vous l'oubliez*, he is not afraid that you will forget him.

NOTE.—Where *not* is expressed in English in the subordinate sentence, *ne pas* must be used after *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, *trembler*, no matter whether the principal sentence be affirmative or negative: *il craint que son frère ne vienne pas*, he is afraid that his brother will not come; *je ne crains point qu'il ne se tire pas d'affaire*, I have no fear of his not getting out of the scrape.

c. After *autre*, *autrement*, *plus*, *mieux*, *moins*, *moindre*, *meilleur*, *pire*, when used in affirmative sentences: *il est tout autre qu'il*

n'était; *il est plus riche qu'on ne le dit; sa fille est mieux instruite que vous ne le croyez.* But if the principal sentence is *negative*, no negation is inserted in the dependent sentence: *il n'est pas plus modeste qu'il le paraît.*

d. After *empêcher*, to hinder, to prevent; and *éviter*, to prevent, to avoid: *les fautes d'Homère n'ont pas empêché qu'il ne fût sublime; je voudrais bien éviter qu'il ne vînt chez-moi.*

e. After *nier*, *douter*, *disputer*, *contester*, *disconvenir*, *désespérer*, when accompanied by a *negation*: *je ne doute point que cela n'ait été dit; je ne disconviens pas qu'il ne soit plus riche que son frère; je ne désespère pas qu'il ne se tire d'affaire.* But when *nier*, *douter*, &c., are employed affirmatively, the dependent sentence takes no negation: *je doute que cela ait été dit; je désespère qu'il se rétablisse.*

ADDITIONAL REMARKS.—The conjunctive locutions *avant que*, *sans que*, and the verb *défendre*, are never followed by *ne*: *avant qu'il fasse froid: le maître a défendu que nous allassions au jardin.*

Concord of the Verb with its Subject.

I. A verb must agree with its subject* in number and person: *je vous aime; tu ne parles pas; il s'en va; sa mère lui a donné de l'argent; nous avons diné; vous perdriez à ce jeu-là; les richesses attirent les amis, la pauvreté les éloigne.*

II. When the subject is composed of several nouns or pronouns, the verb is put in the plural; and, if the several words composing the subject happen to be of different persons, it is made to agree with the person taking precedence: † *son père et son oncle viendront nous voir; le capitaine et moi nous allâmes droit à la porte de la chambre; toi et lui vous êtes heureux.*

Exceptions.

1. The verb agrees with the last of several nouns or pronouns composing the subject.

a. When the words composing the subject are of analogous import (synonymous): *son courage, son intrépidité étonne les plus braves.*

b. When the words composing the subject are connected by

* The *subject* may be either a noun substantive, or a pronoun, or an infinitive; or it may consist also of several substantives, pronouns, or infinitives.

† The first person takes precedence of the second, the second of the third.

the conjunction *ou* : *il n'y a rien que la crainte ou l'espérance ne persuade aux hommes.*

REMARK.—However, if the words connected by *ou* happen to be of different persons, the verb is put in the plural and made to agree with the person taking precedence : *vous ou moi* irons ; *vous ou votre cousin* écrirez *la lettre.*

c. When the words composing the subject are placed in order of gradation (in other terms, when they are arranged in a sort of climax) ; *ce sacrifice, votre intérêt, votre honneur, la patrie* l'exige.

d. When the last of the words composing the subject happens to be a *collective* or *resuming* expression, i. e., an expression referring to the other (preceding) components of the subject, *collectively* or to *each* of them separately, as *tout, rien, nul, personne, aucun, chacun* : *vieillards, femmes, enfants, personne* n'échappa *au carnage* ; *le temps, les biens, la vie, tout* est à *la patrie.*

2. When the subject is composed of two substantives, or pronouns, connected by one of the conjunctions, *comme, de même que, ainsi que, aussi bien que,** the verb is made to agree with the first of the two nouns or pronouns : *la santé, comme la fortune,* retire *ses faveurs à ceux qui en abusent.*

III. *L'un et l'autre,* and also *ni l'un ni l'autre,* or any other compound subject of which the component parts are connected by *ni,* demand the verb in the plural : *plus l'homme et la femme s'attacheront l'un à l'autre, plus l'un et l'autre* seront *heureux* ; *j'ai lu vos deux discours, ni l'un ni l'autre* ne sont *bons* ; *ni l'or ni la grandeur* ne nous rendent *heureux.*

REMARK.—However, if the action or state expressed by the verb can be attributed only to one of the two words connected by *ni,* and not to both of them at the same time, the verb is put in the singular : *ni l'un ni l'autre* n'obtiendra *le prix* ; *ni M. le Duc, ni M. le Cardinal, ne* sera nommé *ambassadeur à St. Pétersbourg.*

IV. When the subject is composed of two or several infinitives, the verb is put in the plural : *vivre et jouir* seront *pour lui la même chose* ; *lire trop et lire trop peu* sont *deux défauts.*

REMARK.—We frequently use the pronoun *ce* after several infinitives, as

* We may here incidentally remark, that there are found occasionally even in standard authors deviations and departures from this as well as from many other rules. Such deviations, however, are, and remain blunders, and should not be imitated by the student, even though Pascal, Massillon, Racine, or the great Voltaire himself stood godfather to them ; they are like spots on the sun in the writings of these great authors.

a species of *resuming* expression, to impart greater force and precision to the sentence. In sentences of this kind the verb *être* is put in the singular: *boire, manger, dormir, c'est toute son occupation.*

V. The verb *être* preceded by *ce*, is put in the plural only when it is followed by a noun in the plural number, or a pronoun of the third person plural: *ce sont les gros écus qui lui manquent; ne parlez pas à ces hommes, ce sont eux qui vous ont calomnié.*

VI. A verb preceded by a *collective* noun (noun of multitude), having for its complement the preposition *de* and a noun substantive, agrees *either* with the *noun of multitude* or with the *complemental* noun, according to whether the action or state expressed by the verb is attributed principally to the former or to the latter: *la quantité de fourmis était si grande qu'elle détruisait tous les biens que l'on confiait à la terre.* Here the verb agrees with the collective noun (*quantité*), as the state expressed by the verb is attributed to that noun, and not to the complemental substantive (*fourmis*). It is the *quantity* or *number* which is stated to have been great, and not the *ants*. *Une nuée de barbares désolèrent le pays.* Here the verb agrees with the complemental noun (*barbares*), as the action expressed by the verb (the laying waste of the land) is attributed to that noun, and not to the collective noun. It is the *barbarians* that are stated to have laid waste the land, not the *cloud* or *swarm* (*nuée*). Thus it will happen sometimes, that where there are two verbs in a sentence of the kind, the one may agree with the *collective*, the other with the *complemental* noun: *la moitié des troupes qui firent la guerre périt de misère.* Here the one verb (*faire—faire la guerre*) agrees with the complemental noun (*troupes*), as the action expressed by that verb is attributed to *troupes* and not to the collective noun (*moitié*); whereas the other verb (*périr*) is made to agree with the collective noun (*la moitié*), as it is not the military forces that are stated to have perished, but only the one-half of them (*la moitié*).

In cases where the action or state expressed by the verb may be attributed equally and indifferently to the noun-collective and to the complemental noun, the general rule is to make the verb agree with the *collective*, if it happens to be a collective *general*, with the *complemental* substantive, if the noun of multitude happens to be a collective *partitive* (see p. 49): *la totalité des hommes redoute la mort; une troupe de nymphes couronnées de fleurs nageaient en foule derrière le char.*

VII. When the collective is an *adverb of quantity*, as *beaucoup, assez, peu, tant, infiniment, &c.*, the verb is always made

to agree with the substantive complement: *beaucoup de gens ont pensé cela; peu d'hommes raisonnent et tous veulent décider.*

VIII. The collectives, *beaucoup, peu, la plupart, une infinité*, are often used without the complemental substantive belonging to them being expressed; whenever this happens to be the case, the verb is made to agree with the complemental noun understood, just the same as if it were expressed: *la plupart* (i. e., *des hommes*) *sont sujets à des infirmités; beaucoup* (i. e., *de gens*) *sont d'avis, &c.; une infinité* (i. e., *de personnes*) *pensent, &c.; peu* (i. e., *d'hommes*) *travaillent avec autant d'ardeur que lui.*

IX. A verb having for its subject the relative pronoun *qui*, agrees in number and person with the *antecedent* of that pronoun: *l'homme qui travaille; le mari et la femme qui vont au marché; ce courage, cette intrépidité qui étonne les plus braves; sa faiblesse ou son inexpérience qui lui a fait commettre tant de fautes; c'est vous ou lui qui irez; c'est votre intérêt, votre honneur, la patrie qui exige ce sacrifice; c'est notre temps, votre fortune, votre vie, tout qui est dû à la patrie; c'est l'un et l'autre qui méritent des éloges; ce n'est ni l'un ni l'autre qui ont gagné la bataille; ce n'est ni l'or ni la grandeur qui nous rendent heureux; ce n'est ni l'un ni l'autre qui est le président de l'Assemblée; la totalité des hommes qui redoute la mort; la moitié des troupes qui firent la guerre périt de misère.*

X. After *un de, un des*, the verb is put either in the singular or in the plural, according to whether the action expressed by it is performed by *one single* or by *several* agents: *c'est une de mes cousines qui m'envoie cette lettre; l'intempérance est un des vices qui détruisent la santé.* The same rule applies equally to the participle: *c'est une de mes cousines que vous avez vue au théâtre; c'est une des plus belles tragédies que nous ayons vues.*

Government of the Verb.

I. A verb cannot have two *distinct* direct complements*. Thus, *Racine* commits a blunder when he says, "*ne vous informez pas ce que je deviendrai;*" he ought to have written *de ce que je deviendrai.*

II. A verb should never be accompanied by two indirect complements expressing the same relation. Thus, you must not say, for instance, *c'est à vous à qui je parle; c'est de vous dont il s'agit, c'est à la ville où je vais.* The suppression of

* The student need hardly be told that this rule refers, of course, only to *distinct* complements; in *il aime son père et sa mère*, the two nouns form a *compound* complement, not two distinct ones.

c'est, which is used simply to impart greater force and precision to the sentence, will suffice to make the fault at once manifest: *je parle à vous, à qui; il s'agit de vous, dont; je vais à la ville, où*. The student will now clearly see that *à qui, dont, où*, are here altogether without function.

In sentences of this nature, the conjunction *que* is used to connect the two *apparently* distinct propositions: *c'est à vous que je parle; c'est de vous qu' il s'agit; c'est à la ville que je vais* (it is to you *that* I speak, &c.).

III. The student should always consult a good dictionary to ascertain the nature of the complement or complements governed by a French verb, as the two languages often differ materially in this respect; thus, for instance, we say in English, he slanders his neighbour; whereas in French we must say, *il médit de son prochain*; she resembles her mother—*elle ressemble à sa mère*; ask your brother—*demandez à votre frère*, &c.

IV. When two verbs are associated, one of which governs a *direct*, the other an *indirect*, complement, the proper complement must be given to each of them: *le peuple attaqua les Tuileries et s'en rendit maître* (not *le peuple attaqua et se rendit maître des Tuileries*).

The same rule applies equally in the case of two verbs governing each an indirect complement, dependent respectively on different prepositions: *le vaisseau entra dans le port et en sortit le même jour* (not *entra et sortit du port*).

V. When a verb is accompanied both by a *direct* and an *indirect* complement, the shorter one of the two is placed first: *elle a donné cent louis à la fille de sa nourrice; elle donne à son frère tout l'argent qu'elle gagne*. If the two complements happen to be of equal length, or nearly so, the first place is assigned to the *direct* complement: *elle donne toujours de l'argent à son frère*.

VI. The indirect complement of a verb should never be placed in a position to lead to a possible misconception of the actual meaning of the sentence; thus, you must not say, for instance, *essayez d'abord de ramener ces esprits égarés, par la douceur*; but *de ramener par la douceur ces esprits égarés*.

VII. If the complement of a verb happens to be composed of several parts connected by one of the conjunctions *et, ni, ou*, the components so connected must always belong respectively to the same part of speech; in other words, the conjunctions *et, ni, ou*, must only connect a substantive with a substantive, a verb with a verb, a preposition with a preposition, &c.: *nous aimons l'étude et la lecture des bons auteurs* (not *et à lire les*

bons auteurs); *je crois que votre conduite est irréprochable et qu'on vous a calomnié* (not *je crois votre conduite irréprochable et qu'on, &c.*); *ils se plaisent au spectacle ou à la promenade* (not *à se promener*); *il n'est pas nécessaire d'apprendre à tirer de l'arc ni à manier le javelot* (not *le maniement du javelot*), &c.

VIII. Passive verbs require for their complement either the preposition *de*, or the preposition *par*; the former, when the verb denotes a *mental* action (as *to love, to fear, to hate, to praise, &c.*); the latter, when it denotes a *physical* or *intellectual* action: *l'honnête homme est estimé de tout le monde*; *elle est chérie de sa famille*; *la bataille de Wagram fut gagnée par les Français en 1809*; *la poudre-à-canon fut inventée par Berthold Schwartz*.

REMARK.—However, *par* is sometimes substituted for *de*, to avoid the repetition of the latter: *votre conduite a été approuvée d'une commune voix par toutes les personnes sages et éclairées*.

Use of the Tenses.

As regards the respective use of the several tenses of the Indicative and Conditional, the two languages may be said to correspond pretty closely,* except that the *French* language lacks the periphrastic forms with *to be* and *to do* (the participial inflection and the auxiliary inflection), of which the *English* language makes such copious and extensive use; whilst, on the other hand, the latter lacks the *preterite definite*,† and the *preterite anterior*, or *paulo-ante pluperfect*, of the French.

The French *imperfect* expresses an action *being performed* (or a state *existing*, or an event *occurring*) at a time past: *je lisais quand il entra*. It implies *continuance* or *repetition* of an action, &c., and corresponds accordingly mostly to the English imperfect of the participial inflection: I was loving, *j'aimais*: or also to the English imperfect (preterite) of the radical inflection, when denoting a *habit*, or an *action*, &c., repeated from time to time.

The *preterite definite* designates a time completely elapsed, and separated from the moment of speaking, by at least one night intervening: *je reçus une lettre hier*, I received a letter yesterday. The preterite definite serves in French as *aorist* or

* A dissertation on the nice differences and distinctions (mostly of a purely idiomatic character) that might be pointed out between the two languages, in the respective use of the several tenses, would be out of place in an elementary work like the present.

† However, the preterite definite may be said to correspond to the English imperfect (preterite) of the radical and the auxiliary inflection.

historic tense, and is employed accordingly, as the imperfect of the radical inflection (*preterite*) is in English, in the narrative of past events.

The *preterite indefinite*, or *compound perfect*, designates either, like the *preterite definite*, a time completely elapsed, *j'ai reçu une lettre l'année dernière*; or a time of which a portion remains still unexpired: *j'ai reçu une lettre aujourd'hui, cette semaine, ce mois, cette année*.

The *preterite anterior*, or *paulo-ante pluperfect*, is commonly used after an adverb of time (*dès que, lorsque, quand, aussitôt que, après que, à peine que, &c.*), in accessory sentences, when the verb of the principal sentence is in the perfect (*preterite definite*) tense: *dès qu'il eût déjeuné, il commença sa tâche*.

The English forms to be going to, to be about to, to be on the point of, and to have just, to have recently, to have not long, to have this moment, find their respective French equivalents in *aller* and *venir de*; *nous allions nous mettre à table lorsque, &c.*, we were going to sit down to table, when, &c.; *mon frère vient de sortir*, my brother has just gone out, &c.

The Subjunctive Mode.

The *indicative* is the mode of *positive, definite*,—the *subjunctive* the mode of *vague, indefinite, problematic*—assertion. The former denotes *reality, actuality, certainty*; the latter, *incertitude, doubt, possibility*.

The *subjunctive* mode is used in French—

a. In accessory sentences introduced by *que*, after verbs that denote *will, wish, command, desire, request, doubt, fear, denial*, or any other idea implying *incertitude* as to the performance of the action (or existence or realisation of the state, or occurrence of the event), expressed by the second verb: *il veut que vous fassiez votre devoir*; *j'ai peur qu'il ne soit pas arrivé, &c.*

b. In accessory sentences introduced by *que*, after *unipersonal* verbs, or verbs used in the manner of *unipersonal* verbs, e. g.: *il faut, il semble, il convient, il est* or *c'est fâcheux, il est* or *c'est utile, il suffit, il vaut mieux, il est juste, il se peut, &c.*

Exception.—*Il semble*, accompanied by an indirect personal complement, and *il y a, il paraît, il résulte, il est certain, il est vrai*, and some other *unipersonal* verbs implying *positive, definite* assertion, demand the second verb in the *indicative* mode: *il me semble que vous avez raison*; *il est sûr que ses amis se sont chargés de payer ses dettes, &c.*

Unless these verbs happen to be accompanied by a negation:

il ne me semble pas que vous ayez raison ; il n'est pas sûr que ses amis se soient chargés de payer ses dettes.

c. Generally, in accessory sentences after a verb accompanied by a negation, or used in the interrogative form : *je ne crois pas qu'il vienne ; croyez-vous qu'il vienne ?*

Exception.—In sentences where the interrogative form is simply employed as an oratorical turn, by way of *affirming* with still greater force than is expressed by the positive form, the verb in the accessory sentence must be put in the *indicative* : *oubliez-vous, que cet homme n'est qu'un vil usurpateur ?*

d. After a *relative pronoun* (or the *relative pronominal adverb où*), when preceded by a *superlative relative*, and also after *peu, le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier, la seule, les seuls, les seules, la première, &c.* : *donnez-moi la meilleure plume que vous ayez ; le chien est le seul animal dont la fidélité soit à l'épreuve ; c'est le moins honnête homme qu' il y ait ; il y a peu d'hommes qui sachent supporter l'adversité ; c'est la seule place où vous puissiez aspirer, &c.*

REMARK.—However, if the verb of the principal sentence expresses *positive* and *incontestible* assertion or affirmation, the verb in the relative clause must be put in the *indicative* : *c'est le plus jeune de ses frères que je connais ; ce n'est pas la plus aimable des trois sœurs qu'il a épousée.*

e. After a *relative pronoun* (or the *relative pronominal adverb où*), when the performance of the action (or existence or realisation of the state, or occurrence of the event), expressed by the verb following is *doubtful* or *uncertain* : *choisissez une femme qui soit prudente ; citez-moi un maître dont les leçons soient aussi profitables que celles de l'expérience.*

f. After *quelque-que, quel que, quoi que, quoique* (conjunction) : *quelque vil que l'usurpateur soit ; quels que soient ses crimes ; quoi que vous en disiez ; quoique nous ne soyons pas riches.*

g. After certain conjunctive locutions compounded with *que* : *afin que, pour que, à moins que, Dieu veuille que, plutôt à Dieu que, à Dieu ne plaise que, en cas que, posé le cas que, supposé que, avant que, bien que, loin que, excepté que, encore que, non pas que, de crainte que, de peur que, pourvu que, sans que, jusqu' à ce que, moyennant que, tant s'en faut que, ce n'est pas que, pour peu que* : *je suis venu pour que nous parlions de cette affaire ; je vous écrirai avant que vous partiez ; entrez sans qu'il vous voie.*

h. After *que* *vicariously*, i. e., *que* used in lieu of one of the conjunctive locutions compounded with *que*, or in lieu of *si* : *approchez que* (instead of *afin que*) *je vous parle ; si votre sœur vient demain et qu'il fasse beau temps* (instead of *s'il fait beau temps*), *nous irons nous promener.*

i. *De façon que, de sorte que, de manière que, si ce n'est que, si non que*, are construed either with the *indicative*, or with the *subjunctive*; with the *former*, when the idea conveyed by the second verb is positive, and relates to the *present or past*: *il s'est conduit de manière qu'il a obtenu l'estime des honnêtes gens*; with the *latter*, when the idea is *doubtful*, and relates to the *future*: *conduisez-vous de manière que vous obteniez l'estime des honnêtes gens*.

The Infinitive Mode.

An infinitive forming the complement of another verb, is usually joined to the latter by a preposition, and most commonly by either *de* or *à*; by the *former*, for instance, after *achever, appréhender, s'aviser, blâmer, brûler, craindre, dédaigner, défier, se dépêcher, désespérer, différer, discontinuer, gagner, regretter, résoudre, soupçonner, &c.*; by the *latter*, for instance, after *aimer, aider, aspirer, assigner, s'attendre, autoriser, balancer, se borner, décider, désapprendre, encourager, enseigner, s'entendre, exhorter, exposer, habituer, hésiter, inviter, manquer*, (with a negative this verb takes *de*; and also in some colloquial phrases: *il a manqué d'être tué*, he has nearly lost his life,) *s'obstiner, penser, persister, renoncer, répugner, se résoudre, viser, &c.*

The student should always, if possible, consult a good French dictionary to ascertain which preposition a verb requires before an infinitive following.

After the following verbs the infinitive complement may take *de* or *à* before it: *commencer, consentir, continuer, contraindre, déterminer, s'efforcer, engager, s'ennuyer, essayer, faillir, forcer, obliger, oublier, solliciter, souffrir, tâcher, tarder*. The choice of the proper preposition depends here in a great measure on the ear, and on what good taste may demand; in the case of some of these verbs, however, the meaning is somewhat modified by the respective use of either the one or the other of the two prepositions; for instance, *continuer à* is used of an uninterrupted action: *il continuait à vivre en libertin*; *continuer de*, of an action that has intervals of suspension: *il continue de nous écrire*. Here again I would advise the student to consult a good French dictionary.

The preposition *de* may be put before the infinitive or omitted (as the ear or good taste may require), after *désirer, détester, espérer, souhaiter*.

The infinitive takes no preposition before it after *aimer mieux, compter croire, daigner, devoir, entendre, faire, falloir, s'imaginer, laisser, oser, pouvoir, prétendre, savoir, sentir, vouloir*.

CHAPTER VI.

THE PARTICIPLE.

THE participle is a form of the verb, so called from *participating* in the properties both of a verb and of an adjective.

The participle has two simple forms, one for the *present* and one for the *past*.

The formation of the participles, present and past, has been treated of already in the preceding chapter; the mode of forming the feminine and plural, and the comparison of participles, have been explained in the chapter on the Adjective.

The Participle Present.

I. The participle present in its *participal* capacity, remains always *invariable*; in its *adjectival* capacity, it agrees in *gender* and *number* with the word which it qualifies.

The *true participle present* expresses an action, and may be replaced by another form of the verb preceded by *qui*, or by one of the conjunctions *lorsque*, *parce que*, *puisque*, *quoique*, &c., corresponding to the English *when*, *if*, *since*, *though*, &c.: *Géorge, aimant son frère, ne put rien lui refuser* (*Géorge qui aimait son frère, &c.*); *les hommes aimant tout le monde, n'aiment ordinairement personne* (*les hommes qui aiment, &c.*); *cet homme prévoyant le danger, ne se mit pas (cependant) sur sa garde* (*cet homme quoiqu'il prévoyât*).

The *verbal adjective* marks the state or condition of the word which it qualifies, and may be constructed with one of the tenses of the verb *être*: *ce sont des hommes obligeants* (*des hommes qui sont obligeants*); *les personnes aimantes ont plus de jouissances que les autres* (*les personnes qui sont aimantes*), &c.

The qualificative in *ant*, is *participle present* whenever it is—

a. Accompanied by a *direct complement*: *son frère écoutant les motifs de la vengeance, se jeta sur lui*.

b. Accompanied by a *negation*: *des écoliers ne travaillant pas, ne répondant pas aux soins qu'on leur donne*.

c. Preceded by the preposition *en*,* either expressed or understood (*gerundive*): *on dit souvent la vérité en riant*; *la mer mugissant* (i. e., *en mugissant*), *ressemblait à une personne irritée*.

The qualificative in *ant*, is usually *verbal adjective*, when it is not accompanied by any kind of complement (since in that case it expresses almost invariably the *state* or *condition* of the word to which it relates): *il ne lit que des livres amusants*: *les eaux dormantes sont meilleures pour les chevaux que les eaux vives*; *on apercevait sur la mer des mâts et des cordages flottants*.

The qualificative in *ant*, when accompanied by an *indirect complement*, is either *participle present* or *verbal adjective*; the former when the sense indicates an *action*: *je les ai vus combattant au champ d'honneur* (*combattant*, i. e., *qui combattaient*—action); *on voit la tendre rosée dégouttant† des feuilles* (*dégouttant*, i. e., *qui dégoutte*—action); the latter when the sense indicates a *state* or *condition*: *voyez-vous ces feuilles dégouttantes‡ de rosée* (*qui sont dégouttantes de rosée*—state).

II. The participle present is never used in French as a substantive, as it is in English.

The Participle Past.

I. The participle past, when not accompanied by an auxiliary, agrees, as an adjective, in gender and number with the word to which it relates: *les inimitiés sourdes et cachées sont plus à craindre que les haines ouvertes et déclarées*.

Exception.—The participles *excepté*, *supposé*, *passé*, unaccompanied by an auxiliary, are invariable, when *preceding* the word which they respectively qualify: *excepté sa sœur*, *supposé ces faits*, *passé cette heure*. The same rule applies equally to the participles, *vu*, *approuvé*, *certifié*, *collationné*, standing at the beginning of a sentence in certain administrative acts: *vu par la cour les pièces mentionnées*; *certifié la présente copie conforme à l'original*, &c.

But if the word modified happens to precede the participle, *excepté*, *supposé*, *passé*, *vu*, *approuvé*, *certifié*, *collationné*, are made to agree in gender and number with it: *sa sœur exceptée*,

* *En* is the only preposition that may precede the participle present in the French language. Whenever the participle present in the English language is preceded by any preposition not corresponding to the French *en*, the English participle present is rendered by the French infinitive.

† We see the gentle dew dripping off the leaves (making the leaves drip).

‡ See those leaves dripping with dew

ces faits supposés, cette heure passée, les pièces mentionnées vues par la cour; la présente copie certifiée conforme à l'original, &c.

II. The participle past accompanied by *être*, agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb: *son frère est venu; sa sœur est venue; ces garçons ne sont pas invités; ces demoiselles sont invitées.*

Exceptions.—1. The participle past of a *unipersonal* verb remains always invariable, no matter whether conjugated with *être* (*il s'est présenté une difficulté; il a été pris des mesures*); or with *avoir*. (See III.)

2. In the conjugation of *pronominal* verbs, the auxiliary *être* is used in the place of *avoir*, simply to please the ear, which might be offended were we to say, for instance, *je m'ai flatté, nous nous avons présentés* (instead of *je me suis flatté, nous nous sommes présentés*).

The same rules that govern the agreement of the participle past accompanied by *avoir* (see III.), apply accordingly equally to the case of the pronominal verbs, though they are conjugated with *être*.

III. The participle past accompanied by *avoir*, never agrees with the subject of the verb; it agrees in gender and number with the *direct* complement or regimen of the verb, when it happens to be placed *after* that complement; but it remains invariable when it *precedes* the latter: *il a reçu une lettre de sa sœur* (invariable, because the direct complement—*une lettre*—is preceded by the participle); *la lettre que j'ai recue ce matin* (agreement of the participle with the direct complement [*que*, which is the representative of the feminine noun, *lettre*], because the participle is placed after the complement); *nous avons brûlé nos vaisseaux—quels vaisseaux avez-vous brûlés; il a vendu deux montres—à qui les a-t-il vendues; ils m'ont causé des désagréments—que de désagréments ils m'ont causés; il a récompensé ses créatures—mes amis je vous ai récompensés, &c.*

The participle remains accordingly invariable also when the verb is not accompanied by a *direct* complement: *cette malheureuse a péri de misère; ils n'ont pas répondu à notre attente, &c.*

Observations to III.

1. The direct complement of a participle past, when *preceding* the latter, is expressed by one of the pronouns, *que, le, la, me, nous, te, vous, se*; or by a noun substantive preceded by *quel, que de, combien de, autant de*.

REMARK.—The participle past remains *invariable* when it has for its direct complement the pronoun *l'*, representing a part of the sentence understood; since in that case *l'* is equivalent to *cela*, which, being masculine and singular, cannot, of course, cause any mutation of the participle of which it forms the complement: *l'affaire fut plus sérieuse que je ne l'avais pensé* (i. e., *que je n'avais pensé cela, scil. qu'elle serait sérieuse*), the matter was more serious than I had thought, i. e., than I had thought it to be (serious).

2. The vague pronoun *en*, signifying *de cela*, is invariably used as an *indirect* complement, and cannot, accordingly, exercise the slightest influence over the participle: *il a des troupes, et il en a demandé aux autres peuples de la Grèce*. In sentences like *le résultat de l'entreprise n'a pas justifié l'opinion que j'en avais conçue*, the participle past agrees with the direct complement preceding it (in the instance here given, *que*), and not with the *en*.

REMARK.—*En* used as the indirect complement of an adverb, such as *combien, autant, plus, &c.*, forms with the latter the *direct* complement of an active verb. However, *combien en, autant en, &c.* (which are simply equivalent terms for *combien de cela, autant de cela, &c.*), being always of the masculine gender and singular number, cannot, of course, cause any mutation of the participle. To write, therefore, *autant d'ennemis il a attaqués, autant il en a vaincus*, is a grammatical blunder.

3. The participle past of a unipersonal verb is always invariable, no matter whether conjugated with *avoir* (*les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait; la disette qu'il y a eu, &c.*) or with *être*. (See II.)

4. The participle past of *intransitive* verbs conjugated with *avoir* remains always invariable, as intransitive verbs cannot have a *direct* complement; in sentences like *les dix ans qu'il a vécu, il les a vécu heureux*, the *que* and *les*, though *apparently direct* complements, are *really indirect* complements, standing respectively in lieu of *pendant lesquels*, and *pendant eux*.

5. *a. Essentially* pronominal verbs having always the second pronoun for their direct complement, the participle past of them agrees, of course, always with the latter: *les troupes se sont emparées de la ville*.

Exception.—The essentially pronominal verb *s'arroger*, which never has the second pronoun for its direct complement: *elles se sont arrogé des droits*; but we write, *les droits qu'elles se sont arrogés*, because the participle has here a *direct* complement preceding it (*que*, which represents *les droits*).

b. The participle past of pronominal verbs formed from *transitive* verbs, follows the general rule (III): *ces demoiselles se sont blâmées; les lettres qu'ils se sont adressées* (agreement

of the participle with the direct complement preceding—*se* and *que*) ; *ils se sont adressé des lettres* (no agreement because the direct complement stands after the participle) ; *ils se sont écrit* (participle invariable, because the verb is not accompanied by a direct complement).

c. The participle past of pronominal verbs formed from *intransitive* verbs, remains always *invariable*, in conformity to observation 4: *nous nous sommes succédé* ; *elles se sont parlé*.

Exception.—The three pronominal verbs, *se douter*, *se prévaloir*, *s'échapper*, to which custom has imparted the character of essentially pronominal verbs, and of which the participle past agrees accordingly always with the second pronoun: *les deux brigands se sont échappés* ; *cette fille s'est prévalu de votre simplicité* ; *nous nous étions doutés de la cause de votre départ*.

6. The participle past between two *que*'s is always invariable: *la peine que j'avais prévu que vous causerait cette affaire* ; *les embarras que nous avons su que vous aviez*.

7. The participle past followed by an infinitive is either *variable* or *invariable*, according to whether it is the *pronoun* preceding, or the *infinitive* following, that forms the direct complement of the verb ; and in order to solve that question, it suffices to see whether or not the infinitive will bear to be changed to the participle present: if it will bear this change, it is the *pronoun* preceding which is the direct complement, and the participle must, accordingly, be made to agree with it ; if it does not admit of this change, it is itself the complement of the sentence, and the participle remains accordingly invariable: *l'actrice que j'ai entendue chanter*, i. e., *chantant*, the actress whom I have heard sing, i. e., singing ; *cette ariette est charmante, je l'ai entendu chanter* this arietta (tune) is charming, I have heard it *sung* (we could not say here *chantant*, which would mean I have heard it *singing*).

REMARKS.—(a) The participle past *fait*, followed by an infinitive, is always invariable: *le négoce qui l'avait fait fleurir, servit à la rétablir*. (b) The infinitive is sometimes understood after the participle of the verbs *pouvoir*, *vouloir*, *devoir* ; in which case the participle past remains *invariable*, having for its direct complement the infinitive understood: *il a fait toutes les démarches qu'il a pu* (scil. *faire*). (c) When there happens to intervene a preposition between the participle and the infinitive following, the participle agrees either with the *pronoun* preceding, and is accordingly *variable*, or with the *infinitive* following, and remains accordingly *invariable* ; the sense of the sentence will settle the question of *agreement* or *non-agreement*: *la dame que j'ai engagée à danser*, the lady whom I have engaged to dance (agreement, because the pronoun preceding—*que*—is clearly the direct complement here) : *il nous a recommandé de lui écrire* (the participle remains

invariable, because the infinitive *écrire* is clearly the direct complement in this sentence).

NOTE.—When the participle past happens to be preceded by *two direct complements*, it always agrees with the *second* of the two: *les torts que je vous ai priés d'oublier*. With the participles *eu* and *donné*, followed by a preposition and an infinitive, the *direct complement* preceding may either belong to the *infinitive* or to the *participle*, and the latter may thus be left *invariable*, or made to agree in gender and number with the complement, according as the one or the other view be adopted: *les obstacles que j'ai eu à surmonter*, the obstacles that I have had to surmount; here the sentence is read: *j'ai eu à surmonter des obstacles*, I have had to surmount obstacles; *les obstacles que j'ai eus à surmonter*, the obstacles which I have had to surmount; here the sentence is read: *j'ai eu des obstacles à surmonter*, I have had obstacles to surmount. *Les leçons qu'on m'a donné à apprendre—les leçons qu'on m'a données à apprendre*.

8. *Le peu* may either mean a little, small, or trifling amount, or the absolute *want*, or *lack* of a thing; it means the former when the sense of the sentence permits its suppression, and, in that case, the participle past agrees with the noun substantive placed after *le peu*: *le peu d'affection que vous lui avez témoignée lui a rendu le courage*, the slight affection which you have shown him, has revived his spirits. Here we may suppress *le peu*, and say simply *l'affection que*, &c., the affection which, &c.; it means the latter when the sense does not admit of its suppression, in which case the participle past agrees with *le peu*, and remains accordingly invariable: *le peu de sincérité qu'il a montré nous a rebutés*; here *le peu de sincérité*, means the *want*, the *absence*, of all sincerity.

9. The intransitive verbs *coûter* and *valoir*, are sometimes used as *transitive* verbs, the former in the sense of *causer*, *exiger* (to cause, to require); the latter in the sense of *procurer*, *rapporter* (to procure, to produce). When *coûter* and *valoir* are thus used in a *transitive* sense, their respective participles past, *coûté* and *valu*, follow the general rule on the agreement or non-agreement of the participle past with the direct complement (III.): *les peines que cette affaire m'a coûtées* (i. e., *causées*), the trouble which this business has cost (i. e., caused) me; *que d'éloges ne lui a pas valu* (i. e., *procurés*) *sa conduite noble et généreuse*, what praises has not his noble and generous conduct got him (procured for him); *cette affaire m'a coûté une peine infinie*; *ses travaux littéraires lui ont enfin valu une pension*.

IV. The same rules that have been laid down for the agreement of the qualificative adjective with the noun or pronoun, qualified by the same (see p. 55), apply equally in the case of the *variable* participle past.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ADVERB, THE PREPOSITION, THE CONJUNCTION,
AND THE INTERJECTION.

THESE four parts of speech may be dismissed more briefly here, as they are not susceptible of mutation or inflection.

A. *The Adverb.*

I. Most of the French adverbs are formed from adjectives, by adding the termination *ment* (corresponding to the English *ly*),

a. To the *masculine* of adjectives ending in a *vowel*: *poli*—*poliment*; *absurde*—*absurdement*; *assidu*—*assidument*, &c.

Exceptions.—^a *Impuni* makes *impunément*; *traître*, *traîtreusement*; however, the latter adverb is not formed from *traître*, but from *traîtreuse* (feminine of *traîtreux*), in accordance with *b*. ^b In the following the final *e* mute of the adjective is changed to *é*: *aveuglement*, *commodément* (*incommodément*), *conformément*, *énormément*, *opiniâtrément*, *uniformément*. ^c *Fou*, *mou*, *beau*, *nouveau*, form the adverb respectively from the feminine of their second form (*fol*, *mol*, *bel*, *nouvel*): *follement*, *mollement*, *bellement*, *nouvellement*.

b. To the *feminine* of adjectives ending in a *consonant*: *fort*—*fortement*; *franc*—*franchement*, &c.

Exceptions.—^a *Gentil* makes *gentiment*. ^b In the following, the final *e* mute of the feminine of the adjective is changed to *é*: *communément*, *confusément*, *diffusément*, *expressément*, *importunément*, *obscurément*, *précisément*, *profondément*. ^c Adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent*, change the final *nt* to *m*: *constant*, *constamment*; *évident*, *évidemment*.

REMARK.—*Lent* makes *lentement*; *présent*, *présentement*; *véhément*, *véhémentement*.

^d The following are derived from obsolete adjectives, or such as are hardly ever used: *incessamment* (*incessant*), *sciemment* (*scient*), *profusément* (*profus*); and the following are not derived from adjectives: *comment*, *notamment*, *nuitamment*.

II. Certain adjectives are sometimes used in the capacity of adverbs, to modify a verb; to this class belong more particularly the following: *bon* (*sentir bon*), *clair* (*voir clair*), *faux* (*chanter faux*), *ferme* (*frapper ferme*, *tenir ferme*), *haut* (*parler haut*), *juste* (*chanter juste*), *mauvais* (*sentir mauvais*), *soudain* (*sortir soudain*), &c.

III. Besides the adverbs formed from adjectives, the French language has, of course, like the English, a number of *essential* adverbs, and of adverbial locutions (of time, order, place, manner, quality, quantity, &c.). This, however, is a subject which belongs more properly to the domain of the dictionary, to which the student is referred for the respective French equivalents of the English adverbs, and vice versâ.

IV. The comparison of adverbs has been treated of already in the chapter on the adjective (p. 52).

V. With regard to the proper syntactic position of adverbs, it may suffice here to remark, that where the adverb qualifies an adjective, or an adverb, it is placed before the word qualified: *son père est très riche*; *vous venez bien tard*. But where the adverb qualifies a verb, the general rule is to place it in the simple tenses after the verb, in the compound tenses between the auxiliary and the participle: *il parle souvent de vous*; *ils se sont bien battus*. *Adverbial locutions* are placed in the simple tenses after the verb, in the compound tenses after the participle: *je vous quitte à jamais*, *il l'a fait à dessein*.

REMARKS.—*a.* The adverbs and adverbial locutions of *order*, may be placed also *before* the verb: *d'abord on me demanda mon nom*, or *on me demanda d'abord mon nom*. The same remark applies also to the adverbs and adverbial locutions of *time definite*: *il est arrivé hier*, et *demain matin nous irons le voir*. *b.* The interrogative adverbs (*comment*, *combien*, *pourquoi*), and the relative pronominal adverbs (*où*, *d'où*, *par où*), are, of course always placed before the verb.

VI. With the exception of the adverbs of quantity, and a few adverbs formed from adjectives, and which retain the complement of the adjective (*conformément*—*conformément à la loi*; *antérieurement*—*antérieurement au déluge*, &c.), adverbs have no complement.

VII. The use of the negations has been treated of already in the chapter on the verb (p. 140).

B. The Preposition.

In the following list, we shall give only the most general meaning in English of the French prepositions and prepositive

locutions, referring the student for more detailed information to a good dictionary.

a. *Prepositions.*

À, to; *après*, after; *à travers*, through, across; *attendu*, considering, on account of; *avant*, before (denotes priority of time, and precedence of order); *avec*, with; *chez*, at; *contre*, against; *dans*, in (positive, definite); *de*, of; *depuis*, since; *derrière*, behind; *dès*, from; *devant*, before (with respect to place, and also with respect to order, in an opposite sense to *après*); *durant*, during (denotes a longer, uninterrupted duration); *en*, in (indefinite, vague); *entre*, between, betwixt (said of two objects, but used also sometimes in lieu of *parmi*, among: *il fut trouvé entre les morts*, he was found among the dead); *envers*, towards; *environ*, about; *fors*, save, except (obsolete); *hormis*, except; *hors*, save, except (mostly construed with *de*—*hors de*, out of); *jusque*, *jusques*, to, till, as far as (mostly construed with other prepositions, and more particularly with *à*—*jusque* is used before consonants: *jusque dans les nuages*; and also before vowels, the final *e* being replaced by an apostrophe: *jusqu' aux nues*; *jusques* is used before vowels, but less frequently than *jusque*: *jusques à la fin du monde*); *malgré*, in spite of; *moyennant*, for, by means of; *nonobstant*, notwithstanding; *outré*, besides; *par*, by, through; *parmi*, among (used only of an *indeterminate* number, represented by a substantive plural, or by a collective noun); *pendant*, during, in the course of (denotes a shorter duration, a more limited period of time); *pour*, for; *près*, near, hard by (demands *de* after it—*près de*, near: *il demeure près de l'église*; except in the familiar and colloquial style: *il loge près l'arsenal*); *proche*, near, close to (demands *de* after it); *sans*, without; *sauf*, save (saving); *selon*, according to; *sous*, under; *suivant*, according to; *sur*, upon; *touchant*, concerning, about; *vers*, towards; *vis-à-vis*, opposite, over against (demands *de* after it: *nous étions vis-à-vis de l'île de Minorque*; except in the familiar and colloquial style: *il loge vis-à-vis la nouvelle rue*).

b. *Prepositive Locutions.*

À l'abri de, sheltered from, secure from; *attenant à*, contiguous to, adjoining, next; *à cause de*, on account of; *à côté de*, by, next to; *à couvert de*, sheltered from, secure from; *à l'égard de*, with regard to; *à l'entour de*, about; *à l'épreuve de*,

proof against; *à l'exception de*, except, excepted; *à l'exclusion de*, excepting, exclusive of; *à la faveur de*, by means of (by the favor of); *à fleur de*, even with, level with; *à force de*, by dint of; *à l'insu de*, unknown to; *à la manière de*, *à la mode de*, after the fashion of, after the manner of; *à moins de*, under; *à l'opposite de*, opposite, over against; *à raison de*, at the rate of; *à la réserve de*, except; *à rebours de*, contrary to; *à rez de*, even with, level with; *au deçà de*, *en deçà de*, on this side (of); *au dedans de*, within, inside of; *au dehors de*, without, outside of; *au delà de*, on the other side (of), on that side (of), beyond, over; *au derrière de*, behind; *au dessous de*, below, under; *au dessus de*, above; *au devant de* (with *aller*—*aller au devant de quelqu'un*, to go to meet somebody, also to anticipate); *au lieu de*, instead of; *au milieu de*, amidst, in the middle of; *au moyen de*, by means of; *au niveau de*, even to, even with, on a level with; *au péril de*, at the peril of; *auprès de*, near (differs from *près de* in this much, that it adds to the idea of proximity conveyed by the latter preposition, an idea of assiduity, of sentiment: *cet enfant n'est heureux qu' auprès de sa mère*, this child is only happy near (when with) its mother); *tout auprès de*, close to, hard by; *au prix de*, at the cost of, at the expense of; *au risque de*, at the danger of; *autour de*, around, about; *au travers de*, through, across; *aux dépens de*, at the expense of; *aux environs de*, round about; *conformément à*, in conformity with; *en dépit de*, in spite of; *en face de*, facing; *en présence de*, in presence of; *ensuite de*, after; *faute de*, for want of; *loin de*, far from; *le long de*, along; *par rapport à*, with respect to; *pour l'amour de*, for the love, for the sake of; *quant à*, as for, as to.

Observations.

I. Two prepositions may have one and the same complement in common; we may accordingly say, for instance, with perfect propriety: *il a écrit pour et contre le parti prêtre*.

II. Two prepositive locutions also may have one and the same complement in common, provided always that they happen to be construed both with the same preposition; thus we may say, for instance, *le pauvre diable fut étrillé en présence et en dépit de ses amis*. But if the two locutions happen to be construed with different prepositions, the proper complement must be given to each of them; thus, you must not say, for instance, *à cause et par rapport à cette affaire*, since *à cause* is construed with *de*, and not, like *par rapport*, with *à*.

III. A preposition and a prepositive locution cannot have

one and the same complement in common, the proper complement must be given to each of them; thus, you must not say, for instance, *juger suivant et conformément aux lois*, but *juger suivant les lois, et conformément à ce qu'elles prescrivent*.

IV. *a.* The prepositions *à*, *de*, and *en*, must be repeated before each complement: *l'usurpateur doit sa couronne à la fraude et à la force, au parjure et à la violence; il est doux de servir sa patrie et de contribuer à sa gloire; on trouve les mêmes préjugés en Europe, en Asie, en Afrique, et jusqu'en Amérique*.

b. The other prepositions, more particularly those of them that have only one syllable, are repeated before complements of dissimilar meaning only: *dans la paix et dans la guerre; par la force et par l'adresse*. But they are not repeated before complements of similar or synonymous import: *par la force et la violence; avec courage et intrépidité; à travers les dangers et les obstacles*.

c. The preposition is never repeated (not even *à*, *de*, *en*), in the case of two (or several) nouns representing together one and the same object: *vous avez sans doute lu la fable du renard et le corbeau*. The expression here is elliptical; it is as if the words were, *la fable intitulée "Le renard et le corbeau."*

C. The Conjunction.

a. List of the principal Conjunctions.

D'ailleurs, besides; *ainsi*, therefore, thus; *aussi*, also, so, as; *car*, for; *pendant*, however; *comme*, as; *conséquemment*, consequently; *donc*, then; *enfin*, in short; *et*, and; *lorsque*, when; *mais*, but; *néanmoins*, nevertheless; *ni*, nor (*ni-ni*, neither—nor); *or*, now (in argumentation); *ou*, or (*ou-ou*, either—or); *parceque* (*parce que*) because (*par ce que*, in three separate words, means by what, from what, by that which, from that which: *par ce qu'on voit tous les jours*, from what we see every day); *puisque*, since; *quand*, when; *que*, that; * *quoique*, though, although (*quoi*

* We have already had occasion, in the chapters on the Adjective, on the Pronoun, and on the Verb (see pages 52, 53, 67, 68, 87, 93, 94, 149), to point out the most important of the varied uses of this truly Protean conjunction. The elementary nature and restricted limits of the present work, forbid an exhaustive treatise on this subject; and we must therefore rest content here with a simple allusion to the vicarious use of *que*, as a substitute for certain conjunctive locutions compounded with *que*, and also to avoid the repetition of certain other conjunctions, as *quand*, *lorsque*, *si*, *comme*, *quoique*, &c.: *quand on est riche et qu'on* (instead of *quand on*) *est généreux, on ne manque pas d'amis; il ne vient pas, c'est qu'il* (instead of *parce qu'il*, or

que, in two separate words, means whatsoever); *si*, if; *sinon* (*si non*), if not, else, or else; *toutefois*, nevertheless, yet, however. Of these conjunctions only one (*quoique*) is construed with the subjunctive mode; the conjunction *que* governs no mode; it is the *positive* or *doubtful* sense of the verb preceding, which determines the use of either the indicative or the subjunctive mode of the verb of the dependent sentence. (See Chapter on the Verb, p. 148.)

b. Conjunctive Locutions construed with the Subjunctive Mode.

Afin que, to the end that; *à moins que*, unless; *avant que*, before; *au cas que*, *en cas que*, in case that, if, if so should be that; *bien que*, though; *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, for fear, lest; *Dieu veuille que*, God grant that; *encore que*, although, though; *jusqu'à ce que*, till; *loin que*, far from; *malgré que*, for all that (obsolete, and usually replaced now by *quoique*); *nonobstant que*, for all that, notwithstanding that; *non pas que*, not that; *posé que*, *supposé que*, suppose that; *pour que*, that; *pourvu que*, provided that; *sans que*, without (without that); *soit que*, whether.—Compare also page 149, *g*.

*c. Conjunctive Locutions construed with the Infinitive.**

Afin de, in order to; *à moins de*, *à moins que de*, unless; *avant de*, *avant que de*, before, rather than; *au lieu de*, instead of; *au point de*, to such an extent that, to such a pass that; *de crainte de*, *de peur de*, for fear of; *faute de*, for want of; *jusqu'à*, up to, up to the point of; *loin de*, far from; *plutôt que de*, rather than.

d. Conjunctive Locutions which exercise no influence on the Mode of the Verb.

À cause que, because (obsolete, and usually replaced now by *parce que*); *à condition que*, provided, on condition that; *ainsi*

c'est parce qu'il est malade, &c.; and to the peculiar idiomatic expressions (*Gallicisms*) which it forms with the aid of the preposition *de*: *c'est un devoir que d'obliger ses amis*, it is a duty to oblige one's friends; *c'était quelque chose que d'avoir commencé*, it was already something to have begun; *c'est peu que de posséder des richesses*, it is but little to possess wealth. However, custom sanctions the suppression of the *que* in locutions of the kind, and we may equally say, *c'est peu de posséder des richesses*, &c.—Compare also page 87, Remark 2.

* These might with greater propriety, perhaps, be termed *prepositive locutions*, followed by the infinitive, instead of a noun, in the same way as certain prepositions are occasionally, such as *pour*, *sans*, &c.

que, as, even as, so as; *après que*, after; *au lieu que*, whereas; *au moins*, at least; *au reste* (*du reste*), besides, moreover; *aussitôt que* (*sitôt que*), as soon as; *au surplus*, moreover; *autant que*, as much as, as far as; *d'autant que*, whereas, for as much as; *c'est pourquoi*, therefore, that is why; *par conséquent* (*conséquemment*), consequently; *d'abord que*, as soon as; *de façon que* (*de sorte que*), so that; *depuis que*, since, ever since; *de plus*, moreover; *dès que*, as soon as; *durant que*, while, whilst (obsolete, and usually replaced now by *pendant que*); *non-seulement*, not only, *mais* (*mais encore, mais même*), but (but even); *pendant que*, while, whilst; *pour lors*, then; *quand même*, even if, although; *selon que, suivant que*, according as; *si bien que*, so that; *si ce n'est que*, unless, except that; *sur quoi*, whereupon; *tandis que*, whilst, whereas; *tant que*, as long as.

D. *The Interjection.*

The principal interjections (and interjective locutions) of the French language, are:—

Apostrophizing—*O, O; O mon fils!* O my son!

Appeal—*Dieu! grand Dieu! juste ciel!* O God! Great God! Just heaven!

Applause—*Bravo!* well done! *bravo! vivat!* long live!

Astonishment—*Diable!* the deuce! *peste!* dear me! bless me! *bon dieu!* Lord! *miséricorde!* goodness gracious me!

Aversion—*Fi! fi donc!* fie! fie upon!

Calling—*He! ho! holà! hem! ho! ho there!* I say! hoy!

Checking—*Tout beau!* gently! not so fast! *halte là!* stop

Derision—*Oh! oh, oh! zest!* oh! oh, oh! fiddlesticks! pshaw!

Disbelief—*Chansons! tarare!* pooh! nonsense! fiddlesticks!

Disgust—*Pouah!* fy! faugh!

Encoring—*Bis, bis!* encore! da capo!

Encouragement—*Allons! courage!* come! cheer up!

Grief—*Hélas! eh! alas!*

Imprecation—*Malédiction de —!* curses upon —! *peste* (or *la peste*) *de —!* plague (or a plague) upon —!

Indignation—*Foin de —!* fy upon —!

Interrogation—*Hé bien!* well!

Joy—*Ah! bon!* ah! good!

Pain—*Ah! ahi! aie! ouf!* O! oh! oh dear!

Imposing silence—*Chut! paix! silence!* hush! 'st! peace! silence!

Surprise—*Ha ! oh ! bah ! ouais !* hey-day ! lack-a-day ! dear !

Warning—*Gare ! prenez garde !* make way ! have-a-care ! take care !

THE END.

LONDON :

BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

NEW [AND PERMANENT] LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN, LONDON.

SERIES OF RUDIMENTARY WORKS

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

1854.

1. CHEMISTRY, by Prof. Fownes, F.R.S., including Agricultural Chemistry, for the use of Farmers. 4th edition 1s.
2. NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, by Charles Tomlinson. 2nd edition 1s.
3. GEOLOGY, by Lieut.-Col. Portlock, F.R.S., &c. 2nd edition 1s. 6d.
- 4, 5. MINERALOGY, by D. Varley, 2 vols. 2nd edition 2s.
6. MECHANICS, by Charles Tomlinson. 2nd edition 1s.
7. ELECTRICITY, by Sir William Snow Harris, F.R.S. 3rd edition 1s. 6d.
- 8, 9, 10. MAGNETISM, by the same, 3 vols. 3s. 6d.
- 11, 11* ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH, History of the, by E. Highton, C.E., double Part 2s.
12. PNEUMATICS, by Charles Tomlinson. 2nd edition 1s.
- 13, 14, 15. CIVIL ENGINEERING, by Henry Law, C.E., 3 vols.; and 15* Supplement 4s. 6d.
16. ARCHITECTURE (Orders of), by W. H. Leeds. 2nd edition 1s.
17. ARCHITECTURE (Styles of), by T. Bury, Architect. 2nd edition, with additional cuts 1s. 6d.
- 18, 19. ARCHITECTURE (Principles of Design in), by E. L. Garbett, Architect, 2 vols. 2s.
- 20, 21. PERSPECTIVE, by G. Pyne, Artist, 2 vols. 3rd edition 2s.
22. BUILDING, Art of, by E. Dobson, C.E. 2nd edition 1s.
- 23, 24. BRICK-MAKING, TILE-MAKING, &c., Art of, by the same, 2 vols. . . . 2s.
- 25, 26. MASONRY AND STONE-CUTTING, Art of, by the same, with illustrations of the preceding, in 16 4to. atlas plates 2s.
- 27, 28. PAINTING, Art of, or a GRAMMAR OF COLOURING, by George Field, Esq., 2 vols. 2s.
29. DRAINING DISTRICTS AND LANDS, Art of, by G. R. Dempsey, C.E. . . . 1s.
30. DRAINING AND SEWAGE OF TOWNS AND BUILDINGS, Art of, by G. R. Dempsey, C.E. 1s.
31. WELL-SINKING AND BORING, Art of, by G. R. Burnell, C.E. 2nd edition 1s.
32. USE OF INSTRUMENTS, Art of the, by J. F. Heather, M.A. 3rd edition 1s.
33. CONSTRUCTING CRANES, Art of, by J. Glynn, F.R.S., C.E. 1s.
34. STEAM ENGINE, Treatise on the, by Dr. Lardner 1s.
35. BLASTING ROCKS AND QUARRYING, AND ON STONE, Art of, by Lieut.-Gen. Sir J. Burgoyne, K.C.B., R.E. 2nd edition 1s.

RUDIMENTARY WORKS.

- 36, 37, 38, 39. DICTIONARY OF TERMS used by Architects, Builders, Civil and Mechanical Engineers, Surveyors, Artists, Ship-builders, &c., 4 vols. 4s.
40. GLASS-STAINING, Art of, by Dr. M. A. Gessert 1s.
41. PAINTING ON GLASS, Essay on, by E. O. Fromberg 1s.
42. COTTAGE BUILDING, Treatise on, 2nd edition 1s.
43. TUBULAR AND GIRDER BRIDGES, and others, Treatise on, more particularly describing the Britannia and Conway Bridges, with Experiments 1s.
44. FOUNDATIONS, &c., Treatise on, by E. Dobson, C.E. 1s.
45. LIMES, CEMENTS, MORTARS, CONCRETE, MASTICS, &c., Treatise on, by Geo. R. Burnell, C.E. 1s.
46. CONSTRUCTING AND REPAIRING COMMON ROADS, Treatise on the Art of, by H. Law, C.E. 1s.
- 47, 48, 49. CONSTRUCTION AND ILLUMINATION OF Lighthouses, Treatise on the, by Alan Stevenson, C.E., 3 vols. 3s.
50. LAW OF CONTRACTS FOR WORKS AND SERVICES, Treatise on the, by David Gibbons, Esq. 1s.
- 51, 52, 53. NAVAL ARCHITECTURE, Principles of the Science, Treatise on, by J. Peake, N.A., 3 vols. 3s.
54. MASTING, MAST-MAKING, AND RIGGING OF SHIPS, Treatise on, by R. Kipping, N.A. 1s. 6d.
- 55, 56. NAVIGATION, Treatise on: THE SAILOR'S SEA-BOOK.—How to keep the log and work it off—Latitude and longitude—Great Circle Sailing—Law of Storms and Variable Winds; and an Explanation of Terms used, with coloured illustrations of Flags, 2 vols. 2s.
- 57, 58. WARMING AND VENTILATION, Treatise on the Principles of the Art of, by Chas. Tomlinson, 2 vols. 2s.
59. STEAM BOILERS, Treatise on, by R. Armstrong, C.E. 1s.
- 60, 61. LAND AND ENGINEERING SURVEYING, Treatise on, by T. Baker, C.E., 2 vols. 2s.
62. RAILWAY DETAILS, Introductory Sketches of, by R. M. Stephenson, C.E. 1s.
- 63, 64, 65. AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS, Treatise on the Construction of, on Motive Powers, and the Machinery of the Steading; and on Agricultural Field Engines, Machines, and Implements, by G. H. Andrews, 3 vols. 3s.
66. CLAY LANDS AND LOAMY SOILS, Treatise on, by Prof. Donaldson, A.E. 1s.
- 67, 68. CLOCK AND WATCH-MAKING, AND ON CHURCH CLOCKS, Treatise on, by E. B. Denison, M.A., 2 vols. 2s.
- 69, 70. MUSIC, Practical Treatise on, by C. C. Spencer, 2 vols. 2s.
71. PIANO-FORTE, Instruction for Playing the, by the same 1s.
- 72, 73, 74, 75. RECENT FOSSIL SHELLS, Treatise (A Manual of the Mollusca) on, by Samuel P. Woodward, and illustrations, 4 vols. 4s.
- 76, 77. DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY, Treatise on, by J. F. Heather, M.A., 2 vols. 2s.
- 77*. ECONOMY OF FUEL, Treatise on, particularly with reference to Reverberatory Furnaces for the Manufacture of Iron and Steam Boilers, by T. S. Prideaux, Esq. 1s.

RUDIMENTARY WORKS.

- 78, 79. STEAM AS APPLIED TO GENERAL PURPOSES AND LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES, Treatise on, by J. Sewell, C.E., 2 vols. 2s.
- 79* RUDIMENTARY WORK ON PHOTOGRAPHY, containing full instructions in the Art of producing Photographic Pictures on any material and in any colour; and also Tables of the Composition and Properties of the Chemical Substances used in the several Photographic Processes. By Dr. H. Halleur, of Berlin. Translated from the German, by the advice of Baron A. von Humboldt, by Dr. Strauss 1s.
- 80, 81. MARINE ENGINES, AND ON THE SCREW, &c., Treatise on, by R. Murray, C.E., 2 vols. 2s.
- 80*, 81*. EMBANKING LANDS FROM THE SEA, the Practice of, treated as a Means of Profitable Employment of Capital, by John Wiggins, F.G.S., Land Agent and Surveyor, 2 vols. 2s.
- 82, 82*. POWER OF WATER, AS APPLIED TO DRIVE FLOUR-MILLS, Treatise on the, by Joseph Glynn, F.R.S., C.E. 2s.
83. BOOK-KEEPING, Treatise on, by James Haddon, M.A. 1s.
- 82**, 83*. COAL GAS, Practical Treatise on the Manufacture and Distribution of, by Samuel Hughes, C.E., 3 vols. 3s.
- 83**. CONSTRUCTION OF LOCKS, Treatise on the, with illustrations . . . 1s. 6d.
- 83 bis. PRINCIPLES OF THE FORMS OF SHIPS AND BOATS, by W. Bland, Esq. 1s.
84. ARITHMETIC, Elementary Treatise on, the Theory, and numerous Examples for Practice, and for Self-Examination, by Prof. J. R. Young . . . 1s. 6d.
- 84*. KEY to the above, by Prof. J. R. Young 1s. 6d.
85. EQUATIONAL ARITHMETIC: Questions of Interest, Annuities, and General Commerce, by W. Hipsley, Esq. 1s.
- 86, 87. ALGEBRA, Elements of, for the use of Schools and Self-Instruction, by James Haddon, M.A., 2 vols. 2s.
- 88, 89. GEOMETRY, Principles of, by Henry Law, C.E., 2 vols. 2s.
90. GEOMETRY, ANALYTICAL, by James Hann 1s.
- 91, 92. PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY, Treatises on, by the same, 2 vols. 2s.
93. MENSURATION, Elements and Practice of, by T. Baker, C.E. 1s.
- 94, 95. LOGARITHMS, Treatise on, and Tables for facilitating Astronomical, Nautical, Trigonometrical, and Logarithmic Calculations, by H. Law, C.E., 2 vols. 2s.
96. POPULAR ASTRONOMY, Elementary Treatise on, by the Rev. Robert Main, M.R.A.S. 1s.
97. STATICS AND DYNAMICS, Principles and Practice of, by T. Baker, C.E. 1s.
- 98, 98*. MECHANISM, AND PRACTICAL CONSTRUCTION OF MACHINES, Elements of, by the same, 2 vols. 2s.
- 99, 100. NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY AND NAVIGATION, Theory and Practice of, by H. W. Jeans, R.N.C., Portsmouth, 2 vols. 2s.
101. DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS, by W. S. B. Woolhouse, F.R.A.S. 1s.
102. INTEGRAL CALCULUS, by Homersham Cox, M.A. 1s.
103. INTEGRAL CALCULUS, Collection of Examples of the, by James Hann . . . 1s.
104. DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS, Collection of Examples of the, by J. Haddon, M.A. 1s.
105. ALGEBRA, GEOMETRY, AND TRIGONOMETRY, First Mnemonical Lessons in, by the Rev. Thomas Penyngton Kirkman, M.A. 1s. 6d.

RUDIMENTARY WORKS.

NEW SERIES OF EDUCATIONAL WORKS;

OR

Volumes intended for Public Instruction and for Reference :

Now in the course of Publication.

THE public favour with which the Rudimentary Works on scientific subjects have been received induces the Publisher to commence a New Series, somewhat different in character, but which, it is hoped, may be found equally serviceable. The DICTIONARIES of the MODERN LANGUAGES are arranged for facility of reference, so that the English traveller on the Continent and the Foreigner in England may find in them an easy means of communication, although possessing but a slight acquaintance with the respective languages. They will also be found of essential service for the desk in the merchant's office and the counting-house, and more particularly to a numerous class who are anxious to acquire a knowledge of languages so generally used in mercantile and commercial transactions.

The want of small and concise GREEK and LATIN DICTIONARIES has long been felt by the younger students in schools, and by the classical scholar who requires a book that may be carried in the pocket; and it is believed that the present is the first attempt which has been made to offer a complete Lexicon of the Greek Language in so small a compass.

In the volumes on ENGLAND, GREECE and ROME, it is intended to treat of History as a Science, and to present in a connected view an analysis of the large and expensive works of the most highly valued historical writers. The extensive circulation of the preceding Series on the pure and applied Sciences amongst students, practical mechanics, and others, affords conclusive evidence of the desire of our industrious classes to acquire substantial knowledge, when placed within their reach; and this has induced the hope that the volumes on History will be found profitable not only in an intellectual point of view, but, which is of still higher importance, in the social improvement of the people; for without a knowledge of the principles of the English constitution, and of those events which have more especially tended to promote our commercial prosperity and political freedom, it is impossible that a correct judgment can be formed by the mass of the people of the measures best calculated to increase the national welfare, or of the character of men best qualified to represent them in Parliament; and this knowledge becomes indispensable in exact proportion as the elective franchise may be extended and the system of government become more under the influence of public opinion.

The scholastic application of these volumes has not been overlooked, and a comparison of the text with the examinations for degrees given, will show their applicability to the course of historic study pursued in the Universities of Cambridge and London.

- | | | |
|-------|---|---------|
| 1, 2. | CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND, 2 vols., by W. D. Hamilton | 2s. |
| 3, 4. | DOWN TO VICTORIA, by the same | 2s. |
| 5. | OUTLINE OF THE HISTORY OF GREECE, by the same | 1s. |
| 6. | TO ITS BECOMING A ROMAN PROVINCE, by the same | 1s. 6d. |
| 7. | OUTLINE HISTORY OF ROME, by the same | 1s. |
| 8. | TO THE DECLINE, by the same | 1s. |

RUDIMENTARY WORKS.

- 9, 10. A CHRONOLOGY OF CIVIL AND ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY, LITERATURE, SCIENCE, AND ART, from the earliest time to a late period, 2 vols., by Edward Law. 2s.
11. GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE, for use in Schools and for Private Instruction, by Hyde Clarke, Esq., D.C.L. 1s.
- 12, 13. DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. A new and compressed Dictionary of the English Tongue, as Spoken and Written, including above 100,000 words, or 50,000 more than in any existing work, and including 10,000 additional Meanings of Old Words, 2 vols. in 1, by the same 2s. 6d.
14. GRAMMAR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE, by H. C. Hamilton 1s.
- 15, 16. DICTIONARY OF THE GREEK AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by H. R. Hamilton, 2 vols. in 1 2s.
- 17, 18. ———— ENGLISH AND GREEK LANGUAGES, 2 vols. in 1, by the same 2s.
19. GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE 1s.
- 20, 21. DICTIONARY OF THE LATIN AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES 2s.
- 22, 23. ———— ENGLISH AND LATIN LANGUAGES 2s.
24. GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, by Dr. Strauss, late Lecturer at Besançon 1s.
25. DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by A. Elwes 1s.
26. ———— ENGLISH AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by the same 1s.
27. GRAMMAR OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE, by the same 1s.
- 28, 29. DICTIONARY OF THE ITALIAN, ENGLISH, AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by the same 1s.
- 30, 31. ———— ENGLISH, ITALIAN, AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by the same 1s.
- 32, 33. ———— FRENCH, ITALIAN, AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by the same 1s.
34. GRAMMAR OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE, by the same 1s.
- 35, 36. DICTIONARY OF THE SPANISH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by the same 2s.
- 37, 38. ———— ENGLISH AND SPANISH LANGUAGES, by the same 2s.
39. GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, by Dr. Strauss 1s.
40. CLASSICAL GERMAN READER, from the best Authors, by the same 1s.
- 41, 42, 43. DICTIONARIES OF THE ENGLISH, GERMAN, AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, 3 vols. 3s.
- 44, 45. DICTIONARY OF THE HEBREW AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH AND HEBREW LANGUAGES, containing all the new Biblical and Rabbinical words, 2 vols. (together with the Grammar, which may be had separately for 1s.), by Dr. Bresslau, Hebrew Professor 5s.

SUPPLEMENTARY TO THE SERIES.

DOMESTIC MEDICINE ; or complete and comprehensive Instructions for Self-aid by simple and efficient Means for the Preservation and Restoration of Health ; originally written by M. Raspail, and now fully translated and adapted to the use of the British public. 1s. 6d.

GREAT EXHIBITION BUILDING.

The BUILDING erected in HYDE PARK for the
GREAT EXHIBITION of the WORKS of
INDUSTRY of ALL NATIONS, 1851:

Illustrated by 28 large folding Plates, embracing plans, elevations, sections, and details, laid down to a large scale from the working drawings of the Contractors, Messrs. FOX, HENDERSON, and Co., by CHARLES DOWNES, Architect; with a scientific description by CHARLES COWPER, C.E.

In 4 Parts, royal quarto, now complete, price £1. 10s.,
or in cloth boards, lettered, price £1. 11s. 6d.

. This work has every measured detail so thoroughly made out as to enable the Engineer or Architect to erect a construction of a similar nature, either more or less extensive.

SIR JOHN RENNIE'S WORK

ON THE

THEORY, FORMATION, AND CONSTRUCTION
OF BRITISH AND FOREIGN HARBOURS.

Copious explanatory text, illustrated by numerous examples, 2 Vols., very neat in half-morocco.

The history of the most ancient maritime nations affords conclusive evidence of the importance which they attached to the construction of secure and extensive Harbours, as indispensably necessary to the extension of commerce and navigation, and to the successful establishment of colonies in distant parts of the globe.

To this important subject, and more especially with reference to the vast extension of our commerce with foreign nations, the attention of the British Government has of late years been worthily directed; and as this may be reasonably expected to enhance the value of any information which may add to our existing stock of knowledge in a department of Civil Engineering as yet but imperfectly understood, its contribution at the present time may become generally useful to the Engineering Profession.

The Plates are executed by the best mechanical Engravers; the Views finely engraved under the direction of Mr. Pye: all the Engineering Plates have dimensions, with every explanatory detail for professional use.

In octavo, cloth boards, price 9s.

HYDRAULIC FORMULÆ, CO-EFFICIENTS, AND TABLES,

For finding the Discharge of Water from Orifices, Notches, Weirs, Short Tubes, Diaphragms, Mouth-pieces, Pipes, Drains, Streams, and Rivers.

BY JOHN NEVILLE,

ARCHITECT AND C.E., MEMBER ROYAL IRISH ACADEMY, MEMBER INST. C.E. IRELAND, MEMBER GEOLOGICAL SOC. IRELAND, COUNTY SURVEYOR OF LOUTH, AND OF THE COUNTY OF THE TOWN OF DROGHEDA.

This work contains above 150 different hydraulic formulæ (the Continental ones reduced to English measures), and the most extensive and accurate Tables yet published for finding the mean velocity of discharge from triangular, quadrilateral, and circular orifices, pipes, and rivers; with experimental results and co-efficients;—effects of friction; of the velocity of approach; and of curves, bends, contractions, and expansions;—the best form of channel;—THE DRAINAGE EFFECTS OF LONG AND SHORT WEIRS, AND WEIR-BASINS;—extent of back-water from weirs; contracted channels;—catchment basins;—hydrostatic and hydraulic pressure;—water-power, &c.

TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

Published in 74 Parts, price 2s. 6d. each, in 4to, illustrated by very numerous engravings and wood-cuts, a new and much extended edition, now complete in 3 vols. bound in 4, in elegant half-morocco, price Nine Guineas and a Half.

THE STEAM ENGINE,

IN ITS PROGRESSIVE AND PRESENT STATE OF IMPROVEMENT;

Practically and amply elucidating, in every detail, its modifications and applications, its duties and consumption of fuel, with an investigation of its principles and the proportions of its parts for efficiency and strength; including examples of British and American recently constructed engines, with details, drawn to a large scale.

The well-known and highly appreciated Treatise, Mr. TREDGOLD'S national Work on the STEAM ENGINE, founded on scientific principles and compiled from the practice of the best makers—showing also easy rules for construction, and for the calculation of its power in all cases—has commanded a most extensive sale in the several English editions, and in Translations on the Continent. These editions being *now out of print*, the proprietor has been induced to

TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

enlarge and extend the present edition by practical examples of all kinds, with the most recent improvements in the construction and practical operations of the steam engine both at home and abroad.

The work is divided into the sections named below, either of which may be *purchased separately*: working engineers will be thus enabled to select those portions which more especially apply to the objects upon which they may be respectively employed.

Several scientific men, extensively and practically employed, have contributed original and really practical papers of the utmost utility; by which the value of this extended edition is much increased. A copious INDEX for reference is added.

DIVISION A. Locomotive Engines, 41 plates and 55 wood-cuts, complete, making Vol. I. In half-morocco binding, price £2. 12s. 6d.

DIVISION B. Marine Engines, British and American, numerous plates and wood-cuts, making Vol. II.; bound in 2 vols. half-morocco, price £3. 13s. 6d.

DIVISION C to G. making Vol. III., and completing the work, comprising Stationary Engines, Pumping Engines, Engines for Mills, and several examples of Boilers employed in the British Steam Navy; in half-morocco, price £3. 13s. 6d.

LIST OF PLATES.

DIVISION A.—LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES.

Elevation of the 8-wheeled locomotive engine and tender, the IRON DUKE, on the Great Western Railway.

Longitudinal section of ditto.

Plan, ditto.

Transverse sections, ditto.

Details of ditto: transverse section through working gear, transverse section and end view of tender; plan and section of feed-pump; plan and elevation of hand-pump; details of inside framing, centre axle, driving axle-box, regulation-valve, centre-beam stay, &c.

Elevation of Crampton's patent locomotive engine and tender.

Longitudinal section of ditto.

Plan of ditto.

Transverse sections of ditto.

Elevation of the PYRAMON 6-wheeled goods' engine on the Great Western Railway.

Half-plan of the working gear of ditto.

Elevation of a portion of the working gear of ditto.

Diagrams, by J. Sewell, L.E., of resistances per ton of the train; and portion of engines of the class of the

GREAT BRITAIN locomotive, including tender, with various loads and at various velocities; also of the additional resistance in lbs. per ton of the train, when the engine is loaded, to be added to the resistance per ton of the engine and tender when unloaded.

Side and front elevation of an express carriage engine, introduced on the Eastern Counties Railway by James Samuel, C.E., Resident Engineer.

Longitudinal and cross section of ditto.

Plan of ditto; with plan and section of cylinders, details and sections, piston full size.

Elevation of the outside-cylinder tank engine made by Sharpe Brothers & Co., of Manchester, for the Manchester and Birmingham Railway.

Section of cylinder and other parts, and part elevation of ditto.

Longitudinal section of ditto.

Plan of ditto.

Transverse sections of both ends, with sectional parts.

Mr. Edward Woods' experiments on the several sections of old and modern

TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

- valves of locomotive engines,—viz. fig. 1. stroke commences; fig. 2, steam-port open; fig. 3, steam-port open; fig. 4, steam-port open; fig. 5, stroke completed, steam cut off, exhaustion commences; fig. 6, stroke commences; fig. 7, steam-port full open; fig. 8, steam cut off; fig. 9, exhaustion commences; fig. 10, steam completed.
- Ditto, drawn and engraved to half-size: fig. 1, old valve, $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch lap; fig. 2, $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch lap; fig. 3, $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch lap; fig. 4, $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch lap, Gray's patent; fig. 5, 1-inch lap.
- Elevation of a six-wheeled locomotive engine and tender, No. 15, constructed by Messrs. Tayleur, Vulcan Foundry, Warrington, for the Caledonian Railway.
- Longitudinal section of ditto.
- Plan of ditto, engine and tender, with cylindrical part of boiler removed.
- Elevations of fire-box, section of fire-box, section of smoke-box, of ditto.
- Elevations and sectional parts of ditto.
- Sectional parts, half-plan of working gear, ditto.
- Elevation of Messrs. Robert Stephenson and Co.'s six-wheeled patent locomotive engine and tender.
- Longitudinal section of ditto.
- Plan and details of Stephenson's patent engine.
- Section of fire-box, section of smoke-box, front and back elevations of the same.
- Plan of a six-wheeled engine on the Birmingham and Shrewsbury Railway, constructed by Messrs. Bury, Curtis, and Kennedy, Liverpool.
- Longitudinal section of ditto.
- Sectional elevation of the smoke-box, & Sectional elevation of the fire-box of ditto.
- Elevation of the locomotive engine and tender, PLEWS, adapted for high speeds, constructed by Messrs. R. & W. Hawthorn, of Newcastle-upon-Tyne, for the York, Newcastle, and Berwick Railway Company.
- Longitudinal section of ditto. This section is through the fire-box, boiler, and smoke-box, showing the tubes, safety-valve, whistles, steam and blast pipes, &c.
- Plan of ditto.
- Plan of the working gear, details, &c.

Forty-one plates and fifty-five wood engravings.

DIVISION B.—MARINE ENGINES, &C.

- Two plates, comprising figures 1, 2, and 3, Properties of Steam.
- Plan of H. M. screw steam frigate DAUNTLESS, constructed by Robert Napier, Esq.
- Longitudinal elevation and transverse section of ditto.
- Longitudinal section at A B on plan, longitudinal section at C D on plan of ditto.
- Engines of H. M. steam ship TERRIBLE, constructed by Messrs. Maudslay, Sons, and Field, on the double-cylinder principle. Longitudinal sections of engines.
- Transverse section and end view of ditto.
- Transverse section through boilers of ditto.
- Plan of engines, showing also bunkers, paddles, &c.
- Oscillating engines of the Peninsular and Oriental Company's steam vessel ARIEL, constructed by John Penn and Sons. Longitudinal section.
- Section at engines of ditto.
- Section at boiler of ditto.
- Plan at boiler of ditto.
- Section at air-pump, and at cylinder.
- Annular cylinder engines of the iron steam vessels PRINCESS MARY and PRINCESS MAUDE, constructed by Maudslay, Sons, and Field. Longitudinal section.
- Transverse section at engines of ditto.
- Section at boilers of ditto.
- Plan of engines of ditto, showing bunkers, paddles, &c.
- Plan of engines of H. M. steam vessel SIMOOM, constructed by James Watt & Co., of London and Soho.

TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

Longitudinal section of the SIMOOM.
 Cross section of ditto.
 Engine of the RED ROVER, side view and plan.
 Longitudinal section of ditto.
 Cross sections of ditto.
 Sheer draught and plans of vessel.
 Plan of the engine of H. M. steam frigate PHENIX.
 Longitudinal section of engine of ditto.
 Cross section of ditto.
 Engine of the RUBY steam vessel, elevation and plan.
 Sheer draught and plan of vessel.
 Plan of engine of the WILBERFORCE, Hull and London packet.
 Cross section of ditto and vessel.
 Longitudinal section of engines of ditto.
 Elevation of engines of ditto.
 Engines of the BERENICE, Hon. E. I. Co.'s steam vessel.
 Section of ditto.
 Sheer draught and plan, stern view, and body plan of vessel.
 View of the BERENICE, whilst at sea.
 Boilers of H. M. ships HERMES, SPITFIRE, and FIREFLY.
 Kingston's valves, as fitted on board sea-going vessels for blow-off injection, and hand-pump sea valves.
 Boilers of H. M. steam vessel AFRICAN.
 Morgan's paddle-wheels, as fitted in H. M. S. MEDEA.
 Side elevation of ditto.
 Plans of upper and lower decks of ditto.
 Sheer draught and profile of ditto.
 Morgan and Seaward's paddle-wheels, comparatively.
 Positions of a float of a radiating paddle-wheel in a vessel in motion, and positions of a float of a vertically acting wheel in a vessel in motion.
 Cycloidal paddle-wheels.
 Sailing of steamers in five points from courses.
 Experimental steaming and sailing of the CALEDONIA, VANGUARD, ASIA, and MEDEA.
 Engines of H. M. steam ship MEGÆRA.
 Engine of the steam boat NEW WORLD,

T. F. Secor & Co., Engineers, New York. Elevation and section.
 Elevations of cylinder and crank ends.
 Steam cylinders, plans, and sections.
 Details.
 Several sections of details.
 Details and sections.
 Details of parts.
 Plans and sections of condenser, bed-plates, air-pump bucket, &c.
 Details and sections, injection valves.
 Details, plan and elevation of beams, &c.
 Details, sections of parts, boilers, &c. of the steam boat NEW WORLD.
 Sections, details, and paddles.
 Engines of the U. S. mail steamers OHIO and GEORGIA. Longitudinal section.
 Elevations and cross sections of ditto.
 Details of steam-chests, side-pipes, valves, and valve gear of ditto.
 Section of valves, and plan of piston of ditto.
 Boilers of ditto, sections of ditto.
 Engine of the U. S. steamer WATER-WITCH. Sectional elevation.
 Steam-chests and cylinders of ditto.
 Boilers, sections, &c. of ditto.
 Boilers of the U. S. steamer POWHATAN.
 Front view and sections of ditto.
 Elevation of the Pittsburg and Cincinnati American packet BUCKEYE STATE.
 Bow view, stern view.
 Plan of the BUCKEYE STATE.
 Model, &c. of ditto, wheel-house frame, cross section at wheel-house, and body plan.
 Plan and side elevation of ditto.
 Sheer draught and plan, with the body plan, of the U. S. steam frigate SARANAC.
 Longitudinal section of ditto, cross section.
 Engines of the U. S. steamer SUSQUEHANNA.
 Elevation of the U. S. PACIFIC steam packet engine.
 Plan of ditto.
 Boilers of ditto, end views.
 Ditto ditto.

TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

DIVISION C. TO G., FORMING VOL. III.

STATIONARY ENGINES, PUMPING ENGINES, MARINE BOILERS, &C.

- Side elevation of pumping engine, U. S. dock, New York.
- End elevation of ditto.
- Elevation and section of the pumps, ditto.—2 plates.
- Boilers of pumping engines, ditto.
- Boilers, Details, &c. of pumping engines, ditto.
- Plan of the boilers, ditto.
- Isometrical projection of a rectangular boiler.
- Plan and two sections of a cylindrical boiler.
- Brunton's apparatus for feeding furnace-fires by means of machinery.
- Parts of a high-pressure engine with a 4-passaged cock.
- Section of a double-acting condensing engine.
- Section of a common atmospheric engine.
- On the construction of pistons.
- Section of steam pipes and valves.
- Apparatus for opening and closing steam passages.
- Parallel motions.—2 plates.
- Plan and elevation of an atmospheric engine.
- Elevation of a single-acting Boulton and Watt engine.
- Double-acting engine for raising water.
- Double-acting engine for impelling machinery.
- Maudslay's portable condensing engine for impelling machinery.
- Indicator for measuring the force of steam in the cylinder, and diagrams of forms of vessels.
- Section of a steam vessel with its boiler, in two parts—diagrams showing fire-places—longitudinal section through boiler and fire-places.
- Isometrical projection of a steam-boat engine.
- Plan and section of a steam-boat engine.
- Ten horse-power engine, constructed by W. Fairbairn and Co.—4 plates.
- Forty-five horse-power engine, constructed by W. Fairbairn & Co.—3 plates.
- Plan and section of boiler for a 20-horse engine, at the manufactory of Whitworth & Co., Manchester.
- Messrs. Hague's double-acting cylinder, with slides, &c.
- Sixty-five-inch cylinder, erected by Maudslay, Sons, and Field, at the Chelsea Water-works.—5 plates.
- Beale's patented rotary engine.
- Double-story boilers of H.M.S. DEVASTATION, 400 H. P.
- Refrigerator feed and brine pumps.
- Feed and brine apparatus, as fitted on board the West India Royal Mail Company's ships.
- Boilers of H. M. steam sloop BASILISK, 400 H. P.
- Boilers of the SINGAPORE, 470 H. P., Peninsular and Oriental Company.
- Original double-story boilers of the GREAT WESTERN.
- Telescopic chimney, or sliding funnel, of H. M. ship HYDRA, 220 H. P.
- Seaward's patent brine and feed valves.
- Boilers of H. M. mail packet UNDINE, (Miller, Ravenhill, & Co.) 100 H. P.
- Cross sections of engines of H. M. mail packet UNDINE.
- Longitudinal elevation of ditto.
- Brine-pumps as fitted on board H.M.S. MEDEA, 220 H. P. (Maudslay, Sons, and Field.)
- Boilers of H. M. S. HYDRA, 220 H. P.
- Plan of the four boilers, with the supplementary steam-chests and shut-off valves, of the AVENGER.
- Boilers of H. M. steam ship NIGER, 400 H. P., fitted by Maudslay, Sons, and Field.
- Experimental boiler, Woolwich Yard.
- Boilers of H. M. S. TERRIBLE, 800 H. P. (Maudslay, Sons, and Field.)
- Boilers of the MINX and TEASER, 100 H. P. (transferred to WASP.)
- Boilers of the SAMSON, 450 H. P.
- Daniel's pyrometer, full size.
- Boilers of the DESPERATE, 400 H. P. (Maudslay, Sons, and Field.)
- Boilers of the NIGER (2nd plate).
- Boilers of H. M. S. BASILISK (2nd plate).
- Boilers of the UNDINE.

TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

Boilers of the Royal Mail steam ships
 ASIA and AFRICA, 768 H. P., constructed by R. Napier, Glasgow.
 Longitudinal and midship sections of ditto.
 Boilers of H. M. S. LA HOGUE, 450 H. P. (Seaward & Co.)
 H. M. S. SIDON, 560 H. P. Plan of telescope funnel.
 Boilers of H. M. S. BRISK, 250 H. P.
 Copper boilers for H. M. S. SANS-PAREIL, 350 H. P. (James Watt & Co.)
 American marine boilers, designed and executed by C. W. Copeland, Esq., of New York, as fitted on board the American packets.
 Midship section of the hull of the steam packet PACIFIC, New York and Liverpool line.
 Elevation of pumping engines of the New Orleans Water-works, U. S., arranged and drawn by E. W. Smith, Engineer, constructed at the Allaire Works, New York.
 Elevation of pumps and valves, chests, gearing, &c.
 Elevation at steam cylinder end.
 General plan of a turbine water-wheel in operation at Lowell, Massachusetts, U. S., by J. B. Francis, C. E.
 Elevation of ditto.—Section of ditto.
 Plan of the floats and guide curves, ditto.

Large self-acting surfacing and screw-propeller lathe, by Joseph Whitworth & Co., Manchester.
 Longitudinal section, showing arrangement of engine-room for disc engine applied to a screw propeller, and Bishop's disc engine, by G. & J. Rennie, with details.
 Arrangement of engine-room for engines of 60 horse-power, for driving propellers of H. M. steam vessels REYNARD and CRUISER, constructed by Messrs. Rennie. Longitudinal section and engine-room.
 Ditto. Transverse section at boilers and at engines.
 Very elaborate diagrams showing experiments and results of various paddle-wheels.—8 plates.
 Steam flour-mills at Smyrna, constructed by Messrs. Joyce & Co. Double cylinder pendulous condensing engine, side elevation.
 Side elevation, horizontal plan, ditto.
 Longitudinal section.
 Horizontal plan of mill-house and boilers.
 Transverse section through engine-house and mill.
 Boilers, longitudinal and transverse sections, front view.
 Section through mill-stones, elevation of upper part, section of lower part, plan of hopper, &c.

SUMMARY OF THE ILLUSTRATIONS.

		Plates.	Wood-cuts.
Vol. I.	Locomotive Engines	41	55
II.	Marine Engines	85	51
III.	Stationary Engines, Pumping Engines, Engines for Flour-Mills, Examples of Boilers, &c., &c. .	100	58
Total		226	164

FULL-LENGTH PORTRAIT OF
 HENRY CAVENDISH, F.R.S.

Some few India paper proofs, before the letters, of this celebrated
 Philosopher and Chemist, to be had, price 2s. 6d.

HINTS TO YOUNG ARCHITECTS:

COMPRISING

ADVICE TO THOSE WHO, WHILE YET AT SCHOOL ARE DESTINED
TO THE PROFESSION;

TO SUCH AS, HAVING PASSED THEIR PUPILAGE, ARE ABOUT TO TRAVEL;
AND TO THOSE WHO, HAVING COMPLETED THEIR EDUCATION,
ARE ABOUT TO PRACTISE:

TOGETHER WITH

A MODEL SPECIFICATION:

INVOLVING A GREAT VARIETY OF INSTRUCTIVE AND SUGGESTIVE MATTER,
CALCULATED TO FACILITATE THEIR PRACTICAL OPERATIONS;

AND TO DIRECT THEM IN THEIR CONDUCT, AS THE RESPONSIBLE
AGENTS OF THEIR EMPLOYERS,

AND AS THE RIGHTFUL JUDGES OF A CONTRACTOR'S DUTY.

By GEORGE WIGHTWICK, ARCHITECT.

CONTENTS :—

Preliminary Hints to Young Architects on the Knowledge of Drawing.

On Serving his Time.

On Travelling.

His Plate on the Door.

Orders, Plan-drawing.

On his Taste, Study of Interiors.

Interior Arrangements.

Warming and Ventilating.

House Building, Stabling.

Cottages and Villas.

Model Specification :—

General Clauses.

Foundations.

Well.

Artificial Foundations.

Brickwork.

Rubble Masonry with Brick
Mingled.

Model Specification :

Stone-cutting.

——, Grecian or Italian only.

——, Gothic only.

Miscellaneous.

Slating.

Tiling.

Plaster and Cement-work.

Carpenters' Work.

Joiners' Work.

Iron and Metal-work.

Plumbers' Work.

Drainage.

Well-digging.

Artificial Levels, Concrete,

Foundations, Piling and

Planking, Paving, Vaulting,

Bell-hanging, Plumbing, and

Building generally.

Extra cloth boards, price 8s.

ASTRONOMICAL ANNUAL FOR 1854.

COMPRISING

- I. The Ephemerides.
 - II. On the Cometic Mysteries, by Professor A. Crestadora, with Plates.
 - III. Notice of the Biography of J. S. Bailly.
- Price 1s.

THE WORK ON BRIDGES OF STONE, IRON, TIMBER, AND WIRE.

In 4 Vols., bound in 3, described in the larger Catalogue of Publications ; to which the following is the Supplement, now completed, entitled

SUPPLEMENT TO "THE THEORY, PRACTICE, AND ARCHITECTURE OF BRIDGES OF STONE, IRON, TIMBER, WIRE, AND SUSPENSION,"

In one large 8vo volume, with explanatory Text and 68 Plates, comprising details and measured dimensions, in Parts as follows :—

Part I.	.	.	.	.	.	6s.
„ II.	.	.	.	.	.	6s.
„ III.	.	.	.	.	.	6s.
„ IV.	.	.	.	.	.	10s.
„ V. & VI.	.	.	.	.	.	20s.

Bound in half-morocco, uniform with the larger work, price 2l. 10s., or in a different pattern at the same price.

LIST OF PLATES.

Cast-iron girder bridge, Ashford, Rye and Hastings Railway.	Mr. Fairbairn's hollow-girder bridge at Blackburn.
Details, ditto.	Waterford and Limerick Railway truss bridge.
Elevation and plan of truss of St. Mary's Viaduct, Cheltenham Railway.	Hollow-girder bridge over the River Medlock.
Iron road bridge over the Railway at Chalk Farm.	Railway bridge over lagunes of Venice.

BRIDGES OF STONE, &c.

- Viaduct at Beangency, Orleans and Tours Railway.
- Oblique cast-iron bridge, on the system of M. Polonceau, over the Canal St. Denis.
- Blackwall Extension Railway, Commercial Road bridge.
- Ditto, enlarged elevation of outside girders, with details.
- Ditto, details.
- Ditto, ditto, and sections.
- Ditto, ditto, ditto.
- Richmond and Windsor main line, bridge over the Thames.
- Ditto, details.
- Ditto, ditto, and sections.
- Orleans and Bordeaux Railway bridge.
- Ditto, sections and details.
- Rouen and Havre Railway timber bridge.
- Ditto, details.
- Ditto, ditto, and sections.
- Viaduct of the Valley of Malauncey, near Rouen.
- Hoop-iron suspension bridge over the Seine at Suresne, department de la Seine.
- Hoop-iron suspension foot bridge at Abainville.
- Suspension bridge over the Douro, iron wire suspension cables.
- Ditto, details.
- Glasgow and South-Western Railway bridge over the water of Ayr.
- Ditto, sections and details.
- Plan of the cities of Ofen and Pesth.
- Sections and soundings of the River Danube.
- Longitudinal section of framing.
- No. 1 coffer-dam.
- Transverse framing of coffer-dam.
- Sections of Nos. 2 and 3 of coffer-dam.
- Plan of No. 3 coffer-dam and ice-breakers.
- Plan and elevation of the construction of the scaffolding, and the manner of hoisting the chains.
- Line of soundings,—dam longitudinal sections.
- Dam sections.
- Plan and elevation of the Pesth suspension bridge.
- Elevation of Nos. 2 and 3 coffer-dams.
- End view of ditto.
- Transverse section of No. 2 ditto.
- Transverse section of coffer-dam, plan of the 1st course, and No. 3 pier.
- Vertical section of Nos. 2 and 3 piers, showing vertical bond-stones.
- Vertical cross section of ditto.
- Front elevation of Nos. 2 and 3 piers.
- End elevation of ditto.
- Details of chains.—Ditto.
- Ditto and plan of nut, bolt, and retaining-links.
- Plan and elevation of roller-frames.
- Elevation and section of main blocks for raising the chains.
- Ditto, longitudinal section of fixture pier, showing tunnel for chains.
- Plan and elevation of retaining-plates, showing machine for boring holes for retaining-bars.
- Retaining link and bar.
- Longitudinal plan and elevation of cast-iron beam with truss columns.
- Longitudinal elevation and section of trussing, &c.
- Plan of pier at level of footpath.
- Detail of cantilevers for supporting the balconies round the towers.
- Elevation and section of cantilevers.
- Detail of key-stone & Hungarian arms.
- Front elevation of toll-houses and wing walls.
- Longitudinal elevation of toll-house, fixture pier, wing wall, and pedestal.
- Vertical section of retaining-piers.
- Section at end of fixture pier, showing chain-holes.
- Lamp and pedestal at entrance of bridge.
- Lamp and pedestal at end of wing walls.

Separately sold from the above in a volume, price half-bound in morocco £1. 12s.

An ACCOUNT, with Illustrations, of the SUSPENSION BRIDGE ACROSS the RIVER DANUBE,

BY WILLIAM TIERNEY CLARK, C.E., F.R.S.

With Forty Engravings.

THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK,

WITH AN ASTRONOMICAL ALMANACK,

REVISED FOR 1854. In morocco tuck, price 6s.

CONTENTS.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Air, Air in motion (or wind), and wind-mills.</p> <p>Alloys for bronze; Miscellaneous alloys and compositions; Table of alloys; Alloys of copper and zinc, and of copper and tin.</p> <p>Almanack for 1852 and 1853.</p> <p>American railroads; steam vessels.</p> <p>Areas of the segments of a circle.</p> <p>Armstrong (R.), his experiment on boilers.</p> <p>Astronomical phenomena.</p> <p>Ballasting.</p> <p>Barlow's (Mr.) experiments.</p> <p>Barrel drains and culverts.</p> <p>Bell-hanger's prices.</p> <p>Blowing a blast engine.</p> <p>Boilers and engines, proportions of; Furnaces and chimneys; Marine.</p> <p>Bossut's experiments on the discharge of water by horizontal conduit or conducting pipes.</p> <p>Brass, weight of a lineal foot of, round and square.</p> <p>Breen (Hugh), his almanack.</p> <p>Bricks.</p> <p>Bridges and viaducts; Bridges of brick and stone; Iron bridges; Timber bridges.</p> <p>Burt's (Mr.) agency for the sale of preserved timber.</p> <p>Cask and malt gauging.</p> <p>Cast-iron binders or joints; Columns, formulæ of; Columns or cylinders, Table of diameter of; Hollow columns, Table of the diameters and thickness of metal of; Girders, prices of; Stanchions, Table of, strength of.</p> <p>Chairs, tables, weights, &c.</p> <p>Chatburn limestone.</p> <p>Chimneys, &c., dimensions of.</p> <p>Circumferences, &c. of circles.</p> <p>Coal, evaporating power of, and results of coking.</p> <p>Columns, cast-iron, weight or pressure of, strength of.</p> | <p>Comparative values between the present and former measures of capacity.</p> <p>Continuous bearing.</p> <p>Copper pipes, Table of the weight of, Table of the bore and weight of cocks for.</p> <p>Copper, weight of a lineal foot of, round and square.</p> <p>Cornish pumping engines.</p> <p>Cotton mill; Cotton press.</p> <p>Current coin of the principal commercial countries, with their weight and relative value in British money.</p> <p>Digging, well-sinking, &c.</p> <p>Docks, dry, at Greenock.</p> <p>Draining by steam power.</p> <p>Dredging machinery.</p> <p>DWARF, Table of experiments with H. M. screw steam tender.</p> <p>Earthwork and embankments, Tables of contents, &c.</p> <p>Experiments on rectangular bars of malleable iron, by Mr. Barlow; on angle and T iron bars.</p> <p>Fairbairn (Wm.), on the expansive action of steam, and a new construction of expansion valves for condensing steam engines.</p> <p>Feet reduced to links and decimals.</p> <p>Fire-proof flooring.</p> <p>Flour-mills.</p> <p>Fluids in motion.</p> <p>Francis (J. B., of Lowell, Massachusetts), his water-wheel.</p> <p>French measures.</p> <p>Friction.</p> <p>Fuel, boilers, furnaces, &c.</p> <p>Furnaces and boilers.</p> <p>Galvanized tin iron sheets in London or Liverpool, list of gauges and weights of.</p> <p>Gas-tubing composition.</p> <p>Glynn (Joseph), F. R. S., on turbine water-wheels.</p> <p>Hawksby (Mr., of Nottingham), his experiments on pumping water.</p> <p>Heat, Tables of the effects of.</p> |
|---|--|

THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK.

- Hexagon heads and nuts for bolts, proportional sizes and weights of.
Hick's rule for calculating the strength of shafts.
Hodgkinson's (Eaton) experiments.
Hungerford Bridge.
Hydraulics.
Hydrodynamics.
Hydrostatic press.
Hydrostatics.
Imperial standard measures of Great Britain; Iron.
Indian Navy, ships of war, and other vessels.
Institution of Civil Engineers, List of Members of the, corrected to March 15, 1852.
Iron balls, weight of cast; bars, angle and T, weight of; castings; experiments; hoop, weight of 10 lineal feet; lock gates; roofs; tubes for locomotive and marine boilers; weights of rolled iron.
Ironmonger's prices.
Just's analysis of Mr. Dixon Robinson's limestone.
Latitudes and longitudes of the principal observatories.
Lead pipes, Table of the weights of.
Leslie (J.), C.E.
Lime, mortar, cements, concrete, &c.
Limestone, analysis of.
Liquids in motion.
Locomotive engines; Table showing the speed of an engine.
Log for a sea-going steamer, form of.
Machines and tools, prices of.
Mahogany, experiments made on the strength of Honduras. [wheels.
Mallet's experiments on overshot
Marine boilers; engines.
Masonry and stone-work.
Massachusetts railroads.
Mensuration, epitome of.
Metals, lineal expansion of.
Morin's (Col.) experiments.
Motion; motion of water in rivers.
Nails, weight and length.
Navies — of the United States; Indian Navy; Oriental and Peninsular Company; British Navy; of Austria; Denmark; Naples; Spain; France; Germanic Confederation; Holland; Portugal; Prussia; Sardinia; Sweden and Norway; Turkey; Russia
Royal West India Mail Company's fleet.
New York, State of, railroads.
Numbers, Table of the fourth and fifth power of.
Paddle-wheel steamers.
Pambour (Count de) and Mr. Parkes' experiments on boilers for the production of steam.
Peacocke's (R. A.) hydraulic experiments.
Pile-driving.
Pitch of wheels. Table to find the diameter of a wheel for a given pitch of teeth.
Plastering.
Playfair (Dr. Lyon).
Preserved timber.
Prices for railways, paid by H. M. Office of Works; smith and founder's work.
Prony's experiments.
Proportions of steam engines and boilers.
Pumping engines; pumping water by steam power.
Rails, chairs, &c., Table of.
Railway, American, statistics; railway and building contractor's prices; carriages.
Rain, Tables of.
Rammell's (T. W.) plan and estimate for a distributing apparatus by fixed pipes and hydrants.
Rennie's (Mr. Geo.) experiments; (the late J.) estimate.
Roads, experiments upon carriages travelling on ordinary roads; influence of the diameter of the wheels; Morin's experiments on the traction of carriages, and the destructive effects which they produce upon roads.
Robinson (Dixon), his experiments and material.
Roofs; covering of roofs.
Ropes, Morin's recent experiments on the stiffness of ropes; tarred ropes; dry white ropes.
Saw-mill.
Screw steamers.
Sewage manures.
Sewers, castings for. their estimates, &c.

THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK.

Signs and abbreviations used in arithmetic and mathematical expressions.

Slating.

Sleepers, quantity in cubic feet, &c.

Smeaton's experiments on wind-mills.

Smith and founder's prices.

Specific gravity, Table of.

Steam dredging; Navigation; Tables of the elastic force; Table of Vessels of war, of America; of England; of India; and of several other maritime nations.

Steel, weight of round steel.

Stone, per lb., stone, qr., cwt., and ton, &c., Table of the price.

Stones.

Strength of columns; Materials of construction.

Sugar-mill.

Suspension aqueduct over the Alleghany River; Bridges over ditto.

Table of experiments with H. M. screw steam tender DWARF; of gradients; iron roofs; latent heats; paddle-wheel steamers of H. M. Service and Post-Office Service; pressure of the wind moving at given velocities; prices of galvanized tinned iron tube; specific heats; the cohesive power of bodies; columns, posts, &c., of timber and iron; the comparative strength, size, weight, and price of iron-wire rope (A. Smith's), hempen rope, and iron chain; corresponding velocities with heads of water as high as 50 ft., in feet and decimals; dimensions of the principal parts of marine engines; effects of heat on different metals; elastic force of steam; expansion and density of water; expansion of solids by increasing the temperature; expansion of water by heat; heights corresponding to different velocities, in French metres; lineal expansion of metals; motion of water, and quantities discharged by pipes of different diameters; power of metals, &c.; pressure, &c., of wind-mill sails; principal dimensions of 28 merchant steamers with screw propellers; of steamers with paddle-wheels; progressive, dilatation of metals by heat, &c.; proportion of real to theoretica

discharge through thin-lipped orifices; quantities of water, in cubic feet, discharged over a weir per minute, hour, &c.; relative weight and strength of ropes and chains; results of experiments on the friction of unctuous surfaces; scantlings of posts of oak; size and weight of iron laths; weight in lbs. required to crush $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch cubes of stone, and other bodies; weight of a lineal foot of cast-iron pipes, in lbs.; weight of a lineal foot of flat bar iron, in lbs.; weight of a lineal foot of square and round bar iron; weight of a superficial foot of various metals, in lbs.; weight of modules of elasticity of various metals; velocities of paddle-wheels of different diameters, in feet per minute, and British statute miles, per hour; the dimensions, cost, and price per cubic yard, of ten of the principal bridges or viaducts built for railways; the height of the boiling point at different heights;—to find the diameter of a wheel for a given pitch of teeth, &c.

Tables of squares, cubes, square and cube roots.

Teeth of wheels.

Temperature, the relative indications of, by different thermometers.

Thermometers, Table of comparison of different.

Timber for carpentry and joinery purposes; Table of the properties of different kinds of.

Tin plates, Table of the weight of.

Tools and machines, prices of.

Traction, Morin's experiments on.

Tredgold's Rules for Hydraulics, from Eytelwein's Equation.

Turbines, Report on, by Joseph Glynn and others.

Values of different materials.

Water-wheels.

Watson's (H. H.) analysis of limestone from the quarries at Chatburn.

Weight of angle and T iron bars; of woods.

Weights and measures.

West India Royal Mail Company.

Whitelaw's experiments on turbine water-wheels.

THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK.

White's (Mr., of Cowes) experiments on Honduras mahogany.

Wicksteed's (Thos.) experiments on the evaporating power of different kinds of coal.

Wind-mills; of air, air in motion, &c. Woods.

Wrought iron, prices of.

Zinc as a material for use in house-building.

In one Volume 8vo, extra cloth, bound, price 9s.

THE STUDENT'S GUIDE TO THE PRACTICE OF DESIGNING, MEASURING, AND VALUING ARTIFICERS' WORKS;

Containing Directions for taking Dimensions, abstracting the same, and bringing the Quantities into Bill; with Tables of Constants, and copious memoranda for the Valuation of Labour and Materials in the respective trades of Bricklayer and Slater, Carpenter and Joiner, Sawyer, Stonemason, Plasterer, Smith and Ironmonger, Plumber, Painter and Glazier, Paper-hanger. Thirty-eight plates and wood-cuts.

The Measuring, &c., edited by EDWARD DOBSON, Architect and Surveyor. Second Edition, with the additions on Design by E. LACY GARBETT, Architect.

CONTENTS.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS ON DESIGNING ARTIFICERS' WORKS.

Preliminary Observations on Measurement, Valuation, &c.—On measuring—On rotation therein—On abstracting quantities—On valuation—On the use of constants of labour.

BRICKLAYER AND SLATER.

DESIGN OF BRICKWORK—technical terms, &c.

Foundations—Arches, inverted and erect—Window and other aperture heads—Window jambs—Plates and internal cornices—String-courses—External cornices—Chimney shafts—On general improvement of brick architecture, especially fenestration.

MEASUREMENT.

Of diggers' work—Of brickwork, of facings, &c.

DESIGN OF TILING, and technical terms.

Measurement of Tiling—Example of the mode of keeping the measuring-book for brickwork.

ABSTRACTING Bricklayers' and Tilers' work.

Example of bill of Bricklayers' and Tilers' work.

VALUATION of Bricklayers' work, Earthwork, Concrete, &c.

Table of sizes and weights of various articles—Tables of the numbers of bricks or tiles in various works—Valuation of Diggers' and Bricklayers' labour—Table of Constants for said labour.

EXAMPLES OF VALUING.

1. A yard of concrete.—2. A rod of brickwork.—3. A foot of facing.—4. A yard of paving.—5. A square of tiling.

DESIGN, MEASUREMENT, AND VALUATION OF SLATING.

CARPENTER AND JOINER.

DESIGN OF CARPENTRY—technical terms, &c.

Brestsummers, an abuse: substitutes for them—Joists, trimmers, trimming-joists—Girders, their abuse

DESIGNING, MEASURING, AND VALUING ARTIFICERS' WORKS.

and right use—Substitutes for girders and quarter-partitions—Quarter-partitions—Roof-framing—Great waste in present common modes of roof-framing—To determine the right mode of subdividing the weight, and the right numbers of bearers for leaded roofs—The same for other roofs—Principle of the truss—Considerations that determine its right pitch—Internal filling or *tracery* of trusses—Collar-beam trusses—Connection of the parts of trusses—Variations on the truss; right limits thereto—To avoid fallacious trussing and roof-framing—Delorme's roofing; its economy on circular plans—Useful property of regular polygonal plans—On combinations of roofing, hips, and valleys—On gutters, their use and abuse—Mansarde or curb-roofs.

DESIGN OF JOINERY—technical terms, &c.

Modes of finishing and decorating panel-work—Design of doors.

MEASUREMENT of Carpenters' and Joiners' work—Abbreviations.

Modes of measuring Carpenters' work—Classification of labour when measured with the timber—Classification of labour and nails when measured separately from the timber.

EXAMPLES OF MEASUREMENT, arch centerings.

Bracketing to sham entablatures, gutters, sound-boarding, chimney-grounds, sham plinths, sham pilasters, floor-boarding, mouldings—Doorcases, doors, doorway linings—Dado or surbase, its best construction—Sashes and sash-frames (examples of measurement)—Shutters, boxings, and other window fittings—Staircases and their fittings.

ABSTRACTING Carpenters' and Joiners' work.

Example of Bill of Carpenters' and Joiners' work.

VALUATION of Carpenters' and Joiners' work, Memoranda.

Tables of numbers and weights.

TABLES OF CONSTANTS OF LABOUR.

Roofs, naked floors—Quarter-par-

titions—Labour on fir, per foot cube—Example of the valuation of deals or battens—Constants of labour on deals, per foot superficial.

CONSTANTS OF LABOUR, and of nails, separately.

On battening, weather boarding—Rough boarding, deal floors, batten floors.

LABOUR AND NAILS together.

On grounds, skirtings, gutters, doorway-linings—Doors, framed partitions, mouldings—Window-fittings—Shutters, sashes and frames, staircases—Staircase fittings, wall-strings—Dados, sham columns and pilasters.

VALUATION OF SAWYERS' WORK.

MASON.

DESIGN OF STONEMASONS' WORK.

Dr. Robison on Greek and Gothic Architecture—Great fallacy in the Gothic ornamentation, which led also to the modern 'monkey styles'—'Restoration' and Preservation.

MEASUREMENT of Stonemason's work.

Example of measuring a spandril step, three methods—Allowance for labour not seen in finished stone—Abbreviations—Specimen of the measuring-book—Stairs—Landings—Steps—Coping—String-courses—Plinths, window-sills, curbs—Columns, entablatures, blockings—Cornices, renaissance niches.

ABSTRACTING AND VALUATION.

Table of weight of stone—Table of Constants of Labour—Example of Bill of Masons' work.

PLASTERER.

DESIGN OF PLASTER-WORK in real and mock Architecture.

Ceilings and their uses—Unnecessary disease and death traced to their misconstruction—Sanitary requirements for a right ceiling—Conditions to be observed to render domestic ceilings innocuous—Ditto, for ceilings of public buildings—Barbarous shifts necessitated by wrong ceiling—Technical terms in Plasterers' work.

MEASUREMENT of Plaster-work.

DESIGNING, MEASURING, AND VALUING ARTIFICERS' WORKS.

Abbreviations — Abstracting of Plasterers' work — Example of Bill of Plasterers' work.

VALUATION.

Memoranda of quantities of materials — Constants of Labour.

SMITH AND FOUNDER.

ON THE USE OF METAL-WORK IN ARCHITECTURE.

Iron not rightly to be used much more now than in the middle ages — Substitutes for the present extravagant use of iron — Fire-proof (and sanitary) ceiling and flooring — Fire-proof roof-framing in brick and iron — Another method, applicable to hipped roofs — A mode of untrussed roof-framing in iron only — A principle for iron trussed roofing on any plan or scale — Another variation thereof — On the decoration of metallic architecture.

MEASUREMENT of Smiths' and Founders' work.

PLUMBER, PAINTER, GLAZIER, &c.

DESIGN, &c. OF LEAD-WORK.

MEASUREMENT OF PAINT-WORK — Abbreviations.

Specimen of the measuring-book — Abstract of Paint-work — Example of Bill of Paint-work.

VALUATION of Paint-work.

Constants of Labour — Measurement and Valuation of GLAZING — Measurement and Valuation of PAPER-HANGING.

APPENDIX ON WARMING.

Modifications of sanitary construction to suit the English open fire — More economic modes of warming in public buildings — Ditto, for private ones — Warming by gas.

In 12mo., price 5s. bound and lettered,

THE OPERATIVE MECHANIC'S WORKSHOP COMPANION, AND THE SCIENTIFIC GENTLEMAN'S PRACTICAL ASSISTANT;

Comprising a great variety of the most useful Rules in Mechanical Science, divested of mathematical complexity; with numerous Tables of Practical Data and Calculated Results, for facilitating Mechanical and Commercial Transactions.

BY W. TEMPLETON,

AUTHOR OF SEVERAL SCIENTIFIC WORKS.

Third edition, with the addition of Mechanical Tables for the use of Operative Smiths, Millwrights, and Engineers; and practical directions for the Smelting of Metallic Ores.

2 vols. 4to, price £2. 16s.,

CARPENTRY AND JOINERY;

Containing 190 Plates; a work suitable to Carpenters and Builders, comprising Elementary and Practical Carpentry, useful to Artificers in the Colonies.

THE AIDE-MÉMOIRE TO THE MILITARY SCIENCES,

Framed from Contributions of Officers of the different Services, and edited by a Committee of the Corps of Royal Engineers. The work is now completed.

Sold in 3 vols. £4. 10s., extra cloth boards and lettered, or in 6 Parts, as follows :

					£.	s.	d.
Part I.	A. to D.,	NEW EDITION	.	.	0	14	0
II.	D. to F.	.	.	.	0	16	0
III.	F. to M.	.	.	.	0	16	0
IV.	M. to P.	.	.	.	0	14	0
V.	P. to R.	.	.	.	0	16	0
VI.	R. to Z.	.	.	.	1	0	0
					£4 16 0		

In 1 large Volume, with numerous Tables, Engravings, and Cuts,

A TEXT BOOK

For Agents, Estate Agents, Stewards, and Private Gentlemen, generally, in connection with Valuing, Surveying, Building, Letting and Leasing, Setting out, disposing, and particularly describing all kinds of Property, whether it be Land or Personal Property. Useful to

Auctioneers	Assurance Companies	Landed Proprietors
Appraisers	Builders	Stewards
Agriculturists	Civil Engineers	Surveyors
Architects	Estate Agents	Valuers, &c.

In 1 vol. large 8vo, with 13 Plates, price One Guinea, in half-morocco binding,

MATHEMATICS FOR PRACTICAL MEN :

Being a Common-Place Book of PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS; together with the Elementary Principles of Engineering; designed chiefly for the use of Civil Engineers, Architects, and Surveyors.

BY OLINTHUS GREGORY, LL.D., F.R.A.S.

Third Edition, revised and enlarged by HENRY LAW, Civil Engineer.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—PURE MATHEMATICS.

CHAPTER I.—ARITHMETIC.

SECT.

1. Definitions and notation.
2. Addition of whole numbers.
3. Subtraction of whole numbers.
4. Multiplication of whole numbers.

SECT.

5. Division of whole numbers.—
Proof of the first four rules of Arithmetic.
6. Vulgar fractions.—Reduction of
vulgar fractions.—Addition and

MATHEMATICS FOR PRACTICAL MEN.

SECT.

- subtraction of vulgar fractions.
— Multiplication and division of vulgar fractions.
7. Decimal fractions.—Reduction of decimals.—Addition and subtraction of decimals.—Multiplication and division of decimals.
8. Complex fractions used in the arts and commerce.—Reduction.—Addition.—Subtraction and multiplication by logarithms.—Division.—Duodecimals.
9. Powers and roots.—Evolution.
10. Proportion.—Rule of Three.—Determination of ratios.
11. Logarithmic arithmetic.—Use of the Tables.—Multiplication and division by logarithms.—Proportion, or the Rule of Three, by logarithms.—Evolution and involution by logarithms.
12. Properties of numbers.

CHAPTER II.—ALGEBRA.

1. Definitions and notation.—2. Addition and subtraction.—3. Multiplication.—4. Division.—5. Involution.—6. Evolution.—7. Surds.—Reduction.—Addition, subtraction, and multiplication.—Division, involution, and evolution.—8. Simple equations.—Extermination.—Solution of general problems.—9. Quadratic equations.—10. Equations in general.—11. Progression.—Geometrical progression.—12. Fractional and negative exponents.—13. Logarithms.—14. Computation of formulæ.

CHAPTER III.—GEOMETRY.

1. Definitions.—2. Of angles, and right lines, and their rectangles.

PART II.—MIXED MATHEMATICS.

CHAPTER I.—MECHANICS IN GENERAL.

CHAPTER II.—STATICS.

1. Statical equilibrium.
2. Centre of gravity.
3. General application of the principles of statics to the equilibrium

SECT.

- 3. Of triangles.—4. Of quadrilaterals and polygons.—5. Of the circle, and inscribed and circumscribed figures.—6. Of plans and solids.—7. Practical geometry.

CHAPTER IV.—MENSURATION.

1. Weights and measures.—1. Measures of length.—2. Measures of surface.—3. Measures of solidity and capacity.—4. Measures of weight.—5. Angular measure.—6. Measure of time.—Comparison of English and French weights and measures.
2. Mensuration of superficies.
3. Mensuration of solids.

CHAPTER V.—TRIGONOMETRY.

1. Definitions and trigonometrical formulæ.—2. Trigonometrical Tables.—3. General propositions.—4. Solution of the cases of plane triangles.—Right-angled plane triangles.—5. On the application of trigonometry to measuring heights and distances.—Determination of heights and distances by approximate mechanical methods.

CHAPTER VI.—CONIC SECTIONS.

1. Definitions.—2. Properties of the ellipse.—3. Properties of the hyperbola.—4. Properties of the parabola.

CHAPTER VII.—PROPERTIES OF CURVES.

1. Definitions.—2. The conchoid.—3. The cissoid.—4. The cycloid and epicycloid.—5. The quadratrix.—6. The catenary.—Relations of Catenarian Curves.

of structures.—Equilibrium of piers or abutments.—Pressure of earth against walls.—Thickness of walls.—Equilibrium of polygons.—Stability of arches.—Equilibrium of suspension bridges.

MATHEMATICS FOR PRACTICAL MEN.

SECT.

CHAPTER III.—DYNAMICS.

- 1.st General Definitions.
2. On the general laws of uniform and variable motion.—Motion uniformly accelerated.—Motion of bodies under the action of gravity.—Motion over a fixed pulley, and on inclined planes.
3. Motions about a fixed centre, or axis.—Centres of oscillation and percussion.—Simple and compound pendulums.—Centre of gyration, and the principles of rotation.—Central forces.
4. Percussion or collision of bodies in motion.
5. Mechanical powers. — Levers. — Wheel & axle. — Pulley. — Inclined plane. — Wedge and screw.

CHAPTER IV.—HYDROSTATICS.

1. General Definitions.—2. Pressure and equilibrium of Non-elastic Fluids.—3. Floating Bodies.—4. Specific gravities. — 5. On capillary attraction.

CHAPTER V.—HYDRODYNAMICS.

1. Motion and effluence of liquids.
2. Motion of water in conduit pipes and open canals, over weirs, &c.—Velocities of rivers.
3. Contrivances to measure the velocity of running waters.

CHAPTER VI.—PNEUMATICS.

1. Weight and equilibrium of air and elastic fluids.
2. Machines for raising water by the pressure of the atmosphere.
3. Force of the wind.

SECT.

CHAPTER VII.—MECHANICAL AGENTS.

1. Water as a mechanical agent.
2. Air as a mechanical agent.—Coulomb's experiments.
3. Mechanical agents depending upon heat. The Steam Engine.—Table of Pressure and Temperature of Steam.—General description of the mode of action of the steam engine.—Theory of the same.—Description of various engines, and formulæ for calculating their power: practical application.
4. Animal strength as a mechanical agent.

CHAPTER VIII.—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS.

1. Results of experiments, and principles upon which they should be practically applied.
2. Strength of materials to resist tensile and crushing strains.—Strength of columns.
3. Elasticity and elongation of bodies subjected to a crushing or tensile strain.
4. On the strength of materials subjected to a transverse strain.—Longitudinal form of beam of uniform strength.—Transverse strength of other materials than cast iron.—The strength of beams according to the manner in which the load is distributed.
5. Elasticity of bodies subjected to a transverse strain.
6. Strength of materials to resist torsion.

APPENDIX.

- I. Table of Logarithmic Differences.
- II. Table of Logarithms of Numbers, from 1 to 100.
- III. Table of Logarithms of Numbers, from 100 to 10,000.
- IV. Table of Logarithmic Sines, Tangents, Secants, &c.
- V. Table of Useful Factors, extending to several places of Decimals.
- VI. Table of various Useful Numbers, with their Logarithms.
- VII. Table of Diameters, Areas, and Circumferences of Circles, &c.
- VIII. Table of Relations of the Arc, Abscissa, Ordinate and Subnormal, in the Catenary.
- IX. Tables of the Lengths and Vibrations of Pendulums.
- X. Table of Specific Gravities.
- XI. Table of Weight of Materials frequently employed in Construction.
- XII. Principles of Chronometers.
- XIII. Select Mechanical Expedients.
- XIV. Observations on the Effect of Old London Bridge on the Tides, &c.
- XV. Professor Farish on Isometrical Perspective.



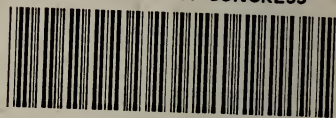
Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

PreservationTechnologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 604 9

